

# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 940N.















- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

**SoftBank 940N is compatible with 3G, GSM and wireless LAN network technologies.**

## Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61) about unclear or missing information.

- SoftBank 940N is referred to as “handset” in this guide.
  - Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
  - Sample screenshots\* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
  - Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
  - “(Japanese)” appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.
- \* Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 940N Island Blue model. Design theme of Main Menu and windows is based on default setting **4 Seasons**.

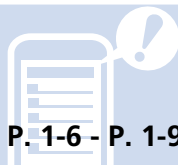
	<b>Getting Started</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Basic Operations</b>	<b>2</b>
	<b>Calling</b>	<b>3</b>
	<b>Security</b>	<b>4</b>
	<b>Mail</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>Internet</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>Camera</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>TV</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>Music Player &amp; S! Appli</b>	<b>9</b>
	<b>Entertainment</b>	<b>10</b>
	<b>Tools</b>	<b>11</b>
	<b>Data Management</b>	<b>12</b>
	<b>Connectivity</b>	<b>13</b>
	<b>Customization</b>	<b>14</b>
	<b>Appendix</b>	<b>15</b>

# Search Guide

## ● Function & Service Name Search

Table of Contents .....	P. iv
Menu List .....	P. 15-21
Index .....	P. 15-47

## ● Display Indicators



## ● Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-8

## ● Solving Problems

Troubleshooting .....	P. 15-6
Warranty & After Sales Service .....	P. 15-60

## ● Objective Search



Mastering  
Basics

My Number &  
E-mail Address

Customizing  
Handset

940N Features

SoftBank Mobile  
Features

<p><b>Basic Operations</b></p> <p>Learn basic menu navigation and key operations.</p> <p><b>P. 2-2</b></p>	<p><b>Text Entry</b></p> <p>Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc.</p> <p><b>P. 2-11</b></p>	<p><b>Messaging Services</b></p> <p>Use SMS, S! Mail and PC Mail to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail or PC Mail.</p> <p><b>P. 5-2</b></p>	<p><b>Mobile Internet</b></p> <p>Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.</p> <p><b>P. 6-2</b></p>
<p><b>My Phone Number</b></p> <p>Check your phone number on handset.</p> <p><b>P. 1-21</b></p>	<p><b>My Account Details</b></p> <p>Save your contact information to Account Details to send it to your friends.</p> <p><b>P. 1-21</b></p>	<p><b>Customize E-mail Address</b></p> <p>Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address.</p> <p><b>P. 5-4</b></p>	<p><b>Exchange Information Wirelessly</b></p> <p>Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared.</p> <p><b>P. 13-2</b></p>
<p><b>Download Music</b></p> <p>Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player.</p> <p><b>P. 9-4</b></p>	<p><b>Set Ringtones</b></p> <p>Set your favorite songs as ringtones.</p> <p><b>P. 14-8</b></p>	<p><b>Wallpaper</b></p> <p>Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar.</p> <p><b>P. 14-3</b></p>	<p><b>Add Shortcuts</b></p> <p>Add frequently used functions to Desktop Icons.</p> <p><b>P. 2-3</b></p>
<p><b>Music Player</b></p> <p>Download songs and play them on handset.</p> <p><b>P. 9-2</b></p>	<p><b>Camera &amp; Video Camera</b></p> <p>Shoot still images and videos.</p> <p><b>P. 7-2</b></p>	<p><b>TV</b></p> <p>Handset supports One Seg Digital TV.</p> <p><b>P. 8-2</b></p>	<p><b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b></p> <p>Use your handset for payment of purchases with electronic money or as a commuter ticket or point card.</p> <p><b>P. 11-2</b></p>
<p><b>Yahoo! Keitai Sites</b></p> <p>A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience.</p> <p><b>P. 6-3</b></p>	<p><b>Graphic Mail</b></p> <p>Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc.</p> <p><b>P. 5-6</b></p>	<p><b>Gaming Device</b></p> <p>Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites.</p> <p><b>P. 9-8</b></p>	<p><b>S! Quick News</b></p> <p>Subscribe to News and receive automatic updates regularly.</p> <p><b>P. 10-4</b></p>

# Table of Contents

Search Guide .....	ii
Table of Contents.....	iv
Package Contents.....	vi
Safety Precautions .....	vi
General Notes.....	xiii
Intellectual Property Rights.....	xix

## 1 Getting Started

Handset Parts.....	1-2
Display.....	1-6
USIM Card .....	1-10
Battery & Charger.....	1-13
Power On/Off .....	1-17
Mobile Manners .....	1-19
Codes.....	1-20
Other Basic Information.....	1-21

## 2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations .....	2-2
Multitask .....	2-9
Text Entry.....	2-11
Phone Book.....	2-19
S! Addressbook Back-up .....	2-25
Advanced Features.....	2-27

## 3 Calling

Overview.....	3-2
Voice Call.....	3-3
Video Call .....	3-7
Call Logs .....	3-10
Speed Dialing.....	3-12
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming).....	3-13
Optional Services.....	3-14
Advanced Features .....	3-16

## 4 Security

PIN Settings.....	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use .....	4-3
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls .....	4-6
Secret Modes .....	4-7

## 5 Mail

Overview.....	5-2
Sending Messages.....	5-6
Receiving & Opening Messages ..	5-10
Handling Messages .....	5-14
Advanced Features .....	5-20

## 6 Internet

Overview .....	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3
PC Site Browser.....	6-5
Page Operations .....	6-7
Bookmarks & Saved Pages.....	6-10
Advanced Features .....	6-12

## 7 Camera

Overview .....	7-2
Capturing Still Images .....	7-6
Recording Videos .....	7-8
Various Features .....	7-10
Advanced Features .....	7-14

## 8 TV

About TV .....	8-2
Watching TV.....	8-6
Recording/Playing Programs.....	8-9
View/Record Timer .....	8-11
Advanced Features .....	8-13

## 9 Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player.....	9-2
Music Playback.....	9-5

S! Appli.....	9-8
Advanced Features.....	9-10

## 10 Entertainment

Mobile Widget.....	10-2
S! Quick News.....	10-4
S! Info Channel.....	10-5
Books.....	10-7
Advanced Features.....	10-8

## 11 Tools

Osaifu-Keitai®.....	11-2
S! GPS Navi.....	11-5
Life History Viewer.....	11-7
Schedule.....	11-9
To Do List.....	11-12
Text Memo.....	11-14
Voice Memo.....	11-15
Calculator.....	11-16
Alarm.....	11-17
Pedometer.....	11-19
Bar Code Reader.....	11-21
Text Reader.....	11-23
Advanced Features.....	11-26

## 12 Data Management

About Data Folder.....	12-2
Accessing Files.....	12-3
Editing Files.....	12-9
File & Folder Management.....	12-11
About Memory Card.....	12-12
Managing Memory Cards.....	12-13
Advanced Features.....	12-16

## 13 Connectivity

Infrared.....	13-2
Bluetooth®.....	13-5
PC Connection.....	13-9
Wi-Fi.....	13-11
Advanced Features.....	13-17

## 14 Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds.....	14-2
Phone Book & Calls.....	14-12
Mail.....	14-16
Internet.....	14-20
TV.....	14-22
Camera.....	14-24
Player & S! Appli.....	14-25
Entertainment.....	14-27
Other Settings.....	14-29

## 15 Appendix

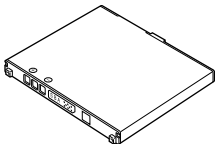
Multitask Combinations.....	15-2
Software Update.....	15-4
Troubleshooting.....	15-6
Text Entry Key Assignments.....	15-11
Kuten Code List.....	15-14
Weather Indicators.....	15-20
Menu List.....	15-21
Specifications.....	15-42
Index.....	15-47
Warranty & After Sales Service.....	15-60
Customer Service.....	15-61

# Before Using This Guide

## Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset. For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).

### ■ Battery (NEBAL1)



### ■ Starter Guide

### ■ Warranty (Handset)




- SoftBank 940N supports microSD™ and microSDHC™ memory cards. Purchase a memory card to use related functions.
- Use only specified AC charger (sold separately) to charge handset.

## Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

### ■ Labels

- Risks of injury or damage from improper use are categorized by levels. Understand these labels before reading this guide.

 <b>DANGER</b>	Great risk of death or serious injury <sup>1</sup> from improper use
 <b>WARNING</b>	Risk of death or serious injury <sup>1</sup> from improper use
 <b>CAUTION</b>	Risk of injury <sup>2</sup> or damage to property <sup>3</sup> from improper use

- 1 Serious injury includes: Loss of eyesight, physical injury, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (blisters or reddening caused by prolonged contact with a heat source higher than body temperature), electric shock, fractures, poisoning and other

conditions requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.

- 2 Injury includes: Physical burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, and other conditions not requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes: Incidental damage to structures and household property and/or to pets and livestock.




## ■ Symbols



- Make sure you understand the following symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Action is prohibited.
	Disassembly is prohibited.
	Exposure to liquids is prohibited.
	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	Action is compulsory.
	Unplug power cord.




- **Handset, Battery, USIM Card, AC Charger (Sold Separately), Desktop Holder (Sold Separately), Memory Card (Not Included), and Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (Sold Separately)**

## **DANGER**

	<p><b>Use SoftBank specified devices (Battery, AC Charger or Desktop Holder) only.</b></p> <p>Use of non-specified devices may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause Charger to overheat, ignite or malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset.</b></p> <p>May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite. Modification of handset equipment violates statutory regulations and is subject to penalty.</p>
	<p><b>Keep liquids away from handset.</b></p> <p>If handset and/or battery is not dried after exposure to fluids (water, pet urine etc.), overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, etc. may occur.</p>



	<p><b>Do not charge, use or leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame or heating equipment, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day).</b></p> <p>May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause Battery to leak, overheat, ignite or rupture. Also, the outer housing may become hot resulting in burns.</p>
	<p><b>Do not use excessive force to attach Battery, AC Charger or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to handset. Battery or AC Charger may be the wrong way around.</b></p> <p>Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>

## **WARNING**


	<p><b>Do not place handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable in a microwave oven or pressure cooker, or on top of an induction heating (IH) cooktop.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause handset, AC Charger or Desktop Holder to overheat, emit smoke, ignite or malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases (propane gas, gasoline, etc.) generate. Do not charge battery in such places.</b></p> <p>Gases may ignite. Before using Osaifu-Keitai® inside a gas station, be sure to turn handset off (deactivate IC card lock beforehand).</p>
	<p><b>Do not drop or throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.</b></p> <p>May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.</p>







## Before Using This Guide

	<p><b>If you notice an unusual sound, odor, smoke, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Unplug AC Charger from outlet.</li><li>2. Turn handset power off.</li><li>3. Remove Battery from handset, being careful of burn or injury.</li></ol> <p>Continued use may cause fire or electric shock.</p>
	<p><b>Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) and conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) away from Charger Terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.</b></p> <p>May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.</p>

### CAUTION

	<p><b>Do not place handset on an uneven or unstable surface.</b></p> <p>Handset may fall, leading to injuries or handset malfunction. Be particularly careful while charging or when vibrator is activated.</p>
---	---




	<p><b>Keep handset out of reach of infants.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may result in small parts being accidentally swallowed or may cause injury.</p>
	<p><b>When a child uses handset, parent supervision is advised. Provide child with proper instructions.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.</p>
	<p><b>Do not store handset in humid or dusty places or in places subject to high temperatures.</b></p> <p>May cause malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>Be careful not to pinch your fingers in the hinge when opening handset.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause injury.</p>


## ■ Handling Battery

### DANGER


- **Check battery type on Battery label. Properly use and dispose of Battery according to type.**


Label	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion


	<p><b>Do not throw Battery into a fire.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>Do not puncture Battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer, step on it or subject it to strong impact.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p><b>Keep metal objects (pins, etc.) away from Battery Terminals. Do not carry or store conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) together with Battery.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>


	<p><b>If battery fluid gets into eyes, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. Do not rub eyes.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may result in loss of eyesight.</p>
---	--


## **WARNING**


	<p><b>If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately stop handset use and rinse with clean water.</b></p> <p>Battery fluid may harm your skin.</p>
---	---

	<p><b>If Battery is not fully charged even after specified charging time, stop charging.</b></p> <p>Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
---	--

	<p><b>If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing Battery, remove it from handset and keep it away from fire. Be careful not to burn or injure yourself.</b></p> <p>Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>
---	--

	<p><b>If Battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire.</b></p> <p>Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing fire or Battery to rupture.</p>
---	--

	<p><b>If any abnormalities (deformation, scratches, etc.) are visible on Battery, immediately discontinue use.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.</p>
---	--


	<p><b>Do not allow pets to bite Battery.</b></p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.</p>
---	--

## **CAUTION**

	<p><b>Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.</b></p> <p>Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.</p>
---	--

## Handling Handset






### **WARNING**






	<p><b>Do not use while operating a vehicle (car, motorcycle, bicycle, etc.)</b></p> <p>May cause a traffic accident. Use of a mobile phone while driving is prohibited by law, and is subject to penalty. Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.</p>
---	--






	<p><b>Keep handset power off near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.</b></p> <p>Handset may cause these devices to malfunction. Devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.</p>
---	--





	<p><b>Keep handset power off aboard an aircraft.</b></p> <p>Handset signal may interfere with aircraft operation. Handset use aboard an aircraft may be subject to penalty. When in-flight use is permitted, observe airline instructions.</p>
---	--

## Before Using This Guide

	<p><b>If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ringtone volume settings.</b></p> <p>These may affect your heart.</p>
	<p><b>If thunder is heard while outside, immediately turn handset power off and seek shelter.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.</p>
	<p><b>Do not point infrared beam at a person's eyes.</b></p> <p>May cause eye injury.</p>
	<p><b>If you use electronic medical equipment, do not place or use handset near the equipment.</b></p> <p>Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.</p>
	<p><b>When using Earphone-Microphone while playing games or music, adjust volume accordingly.</b></p> <p>Sound at high volume may impair hearing; or surrounding sounds may become inaudible over playback volume, resulting in an accident.</p>


	<p><b>Do not place handset on the dashboard near airbags.</b></p> <p>In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.</p>
	<p><b>If Display or Camera Lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components.</b></p> <p>Shatter-proof film prevents Display and Camera lens from shattering; however glass fragments and components may cause injury.</p>
	<p><b>Do not allow fluids, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or Memory Card Slot.</b></p> <p>May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.</p>
 <b>CAUTION</b>	
	<p><b>If skin abnormality occurs with use of handset, immediately discontinue use and consult a doctor.</b></p> <p>Handset contains metals. Depending on your physical condition, you may experience itchiness, rash, etc.</p>

	<p><b>Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset.</b></p> <p>Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.</p>
	<p><b>Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.</b></p> <p>Handset may strike you or other people; Strap may break causing injury, handset malfunction or breakage.</p>
	<p><b>Use caution when using handset for an extended period; handset may become hot.</b></p> <p>Skin contact for extended period may cause low-temperature burns.</p>
	<p><b>Do not bring speaker close to the ear when making calls in handsfree mode or when ring tone/melody is playing.</b></p> <p>May impair your hearing.</p>
	<p><b>Be careful not to pinch your fingers or Strap when opening or closing handset.</b></p> <p>May cause injury or damage.</p>

	<b>Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display.</b> Failing to do so may impair eyesight.
	<b>Do not turn volume up too high when using earphones.</b> Using earphones for extended periods at high volume may impair hearing or harm your ears.
	<b>If Display breaks, do not inhale or touch liquid crystal fluid. If fluid enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. If fluid adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe off with alcohol and wash with soap and water.</b> May result in loss of eyesight or skin damage.
	<b>Keep magnetized objects away from handset.</b> May cause operation errors.



## ■ Handling USIM Card






### CAUTION

	<b>Be careful handling the Notch when removing USIM Card.</b> May injure your hands or fingers.
---	--






## ■ Handling AC Charger and Desktop Holder

### WARNING


	<b>Do not cover with clothing or bedding during charging.</b> Heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.
	<b>Use the specified power supply and voltage.</b> Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction. AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only) Also, do not use commercially available voltage converters. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.






	<b>Unplug AC Charger from outlet before extended periods of handset disuse.</b> Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.
	<b>If liquid (water, pet urine, etc.) gets into AC Charger, immediately unplug AC Charger from outlet.</b> Failing to do so may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.
	<b>If dust accumulates on AC Charger plug, unplug Charger from outlet and wipe with a dry cloth.</b> Failing to do so may cause fire.
	<b>When plugging AC Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from Desktop Holder terminals, AC Charger plug/terminals and plug Charger firmly into outlet.</b> Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.
	<b>Do not touch AC Charger with wet hands.</b> May cause electric shock or malfunction.

## Before Using This Guide

	<b>If thunder is heard, do not touch AC Charger.</b> May cause electric shock.
	<b>Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged.</b> May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.
	<b>Do not use AC Charger and Desktop Holder in humid places such as in bathrooms.</b> May cause electric shock.
	<b>Do not short-circuit Charger Terminals when Charger is plugged into an outlet. Do not touch Charger Terminals with your fingers, etc.</b> May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.
	<b>Do not place heavy objects on the cord of AC Charger.</b> May cause electric shock or fire.

### CAUTION

	<b>When AC Charger is connected to an outlet, do not pull on cord or otherwise subject Charger to strong shock.</b> May cause injury or malfunction.
---	---

	<b>Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger from outlet before cleaning.</b> Failing to do so may cause electric shock.
	<b>Do not unplug AC Charger by pulling the cord. Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger.</b> Pulling the cord may damage the cord resulting in electric shock or fire.
	<b>Do not charge a wet battery.</b> May cause battery to overheat, ignite or rupture.
	<b>Unplug Charger from outlet when charging is complete.</b> Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.
	<b>Do not touch Charger Terminals of Desktop Holder when plugged into an AC outlet.</b> May cause low-temperature burns.

### ■ Near Electronic Medical Equipment



- This section is based on "Guidelines on Safeguarding Medical Equipment from Electromagnetic Waves from Mobile Phones and Other Devices" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), and "Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).


### WARNING



**If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted area.**

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

	<p><b>When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers/defibrillators outside of medical institutions, consult device manufacturer about the influence of radio waves.</b></p> <p>Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.</p>
	<p><b>Observe the following in medical institutions. Radio waves from handset may affect electronic medical equipment.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).</li> <li>• Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.</li> <li>• Turn off mobile phones even in lobbies or areas where use is permitted if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.</li> <li>• Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.</li> </ul>

	<p><b>Keep handset power off in crowded places such as rush hour trains; a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.</b></p> <p>Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.</p>
---	--

## General Notes

### Usage Basics

- Handset use may be disrupted when outside the service area or where signals are weak. Calls/TV image may be suddenly cut off when moving to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. inside/next to a tall building, in a tunnel, underground or in mountainous areas).
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from loss or alteration of data (Phone Book, image/sound files, etc.) stored on your handset or memory card as a result of accident or malfunction. Back up important data such as Phone Book entries.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Using handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of these devices. Use handset as far away as possible from these devices.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.  
<Eavesdropping>  
Interception of radio signals by a third party

## Before Using This Guide

- during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Do not trap Strap or other objects when opening and closing handset. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage handset.
  - Using handset on trains or other public transportation may affect their electronic devices.
  - A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
    - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
    - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
    - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
  - If Battery appears deformed or scratched from external impact, contact Customer Assistance.
  - When using handset for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, charge Battery beforehand.
  - Battery operating time varies by the usage environment and Battery condition.
  - Do not charge Battery:
    - In a humid/dusty place or near sources of vibration
    - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
  - Although AC Charger may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction.
  - Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
  - When Battery life nears its end, it may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
  - FeliCa reader/writer uses the unlicensed 13.56 MHz frequency. Maintain sufficient distance between other reader/writers in use nearby. Make sure mobile phones or other wireless stations operating at the same frequency are not nearby.
  - Keep handset away from strong magnetic force. May cause malfunction.
  - Do not scratch Display with metal objects, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.

### Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operation in a car may be punishable by law.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place.
- Handset use may affect electronics in some car models. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.

### Handling

- Keep away from liquids and moisture. Handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use these devices in the rain or in other humid places (e.g. bathrooms). When carrying handset near your body (pockets, etc.), moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by exposure to liquids or moisture is not covered by the warranty and may be irreparable.
- Handset's color LCD may be treated with special coating for enhanced visibility. To avoid scratching Display, clean handset carefully using a dry, soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth). If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may stain or peel off. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Clean Terminals with a dry cotton swab. Soiled Terminals may cause poor contact, resulting in insufficient charging or handset to turn off.
- Do not place handset near an air conditioner vent. Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to handset and Battery. Placing handset in an overpacked bag or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, Internal Circuit Board or

Battery, and cause malfunction. Doing so with external device connected to External Device Port may damage connector, leading to malfunction.

- Although handset becomes warm during use or charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the Camera Lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn Optical Element.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or Keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Do not leave Battery uninstalled or uncharged for an extended period of time; may alter or erase saved settings and data. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- Do not store depleted Battery; may degrade performance and shorten Battery life.
- Keep the covers of External Device Port and Memory Card Slot closed. Dust or water inside handset may cause malfunction.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C, and humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.

- Battery is a consumable item. Operating time varies by conditions of use; however when operation time becomes extremely short even after a full charge, purchase a new Battery. Use only specified battery.
- Charge Battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C.
- FeliCa reader/writer complies with Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Handset's IC Card authentication complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Do not insert USIM Card with labels or stickers affixed to it. May cause malfunction.
- When connecting an external device, do not insert connector into External Device Port at an angle. When external device is connected, do not pull the cord.
- Do not use handset without Battery Cover. Battery may dislodge and result in malfunction or breakage.

### Camera

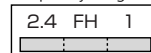
Creating public disturbances from using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).

### Bluetooth®

- Handset's Bluetooth® function complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese

wireless standards. You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.

- Handset incorporates a security function compliant with Bluetooth® standards for security with Bluetooth® communication. However, security may be insufficient depending on such factors as settings. Care is required for communication using Bluetooth®.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for leak of data or information during communication using Bluetooth®.
- Frequency range



Bluetooth® device uses the 2.4 GHz frequency range. It employs the FH-SS modulation system, and has a maximum interference range of 10 m. It is not capable of avoiding the frequency range used by RFID systems.

- Bluetooth® devices share the same frequency band with; licensed in-house radio stations (in factory production lines), specific unlicensed low power radio stations, licensed amateur radio stations (hereafter, "other radio stations") and scientific, medical or industrial devices (including microwave ovens).
  - 1 Make sure no other radio stations are operating nearby.
  - 2 If handset interferes with an in-house radio station, immediately change the frequency of the Bluetooth® device, move to another place or cancel the Bluetooth® function, and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center (see below).



## Before Using This Guide

- If interference with a low power radio station or amateur radio station occurs, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center. From a SoftBank handset: 157 (toll-free) From landlines: See P. 15-61 for Customer Service.

### Wireless LAN

- Handset's wireless LAN function complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- Do not use near magnetic devices (e.g. electrical appliances, audio-visual devices, office equipment, etc.) or sources of electromagnetic waves.
  - May cause noise or prevent connection (especially when using a microwave oven).
  - May interfere with device reception (TV, radio, etc.) or affect TV picture.
  - Target LAN access point may not be found when several access points sharing the same channel are available nearby.
- Frequency range

2.4 DS/OF 4

Wireless LAN device uses the 2.4 GHz frequency range. It employs the DS-SS and OFDM modulation systems, and has a maximum interference range of 40 m. It is capable of avoiding the frequency range used by RFID systems.

- 2.4 GHz device precautions  
Wireless LAN devices share the same frequency band with; licensed in-house radio stations (in factory production lines), specific unlicensed low power radio stations, licensed amateur radio stations (hereafter, "other radio stations") and scientific, medical, or industrial devices (including microwave ovens).
  - Make sure no other radio stations are operating nearby.
  - If handset interferes with an in-house radio station, immediately change frequency or cancel wireless LAN, and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center (see below).
  - If interference with a low power radio station or amateur radio station occurs, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center. From a SoftBank handset: 157 (toll-free) From landlines: See P. 15-61 for Customer Service.
    - For use in an aircraft, contact the airline beforehand.

### Copyrights


Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights

and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment. Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera. The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

### Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or long periods of handset disuse, TV becomes unavailable.

### Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law. This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark  is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

### SAR Certification Information

940N meets the technical standards set by the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg\*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

\* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.541 W/kg for 940N. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR

of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For more information about SAR, see the following websites:

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)  
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)  
<http://www.arib-emf.org/>  
(Japanese)

### SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- Body SAR: Value obtained from continuously talking with handset placed on the body using earphone-microphone at maximum transmission power.
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Value obtained from talking continuously for six minutes.
- Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the standard handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (Japanese):  
<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html>

### FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:  
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### FCC Information to User

940N has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

## Before Using This Guide

- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or TV technician for help.

### FCC RF Exposure Information

940N is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organization through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model.

The maximum SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.346 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.355 W/kg. Body-worn Operation; this device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of

handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly. Non-compliance with the above restrictions may result in violation of FCC RF Exposure guidelines.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <https://gulfoss2.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm> after searching on FCC ID A98-HAE3588. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website: <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

### European RF Exposure Information

940N is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International

Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 0.677W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank's Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.321W/kg\*.

Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much lower. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:

<http://www.who.int/emf>

\* Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the

FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

### Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

940N is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.

The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:  
<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

### Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

### Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use. Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use. Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.
- Mobile Widget, S! Appli, S! Mail and Graphic Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese and the SOFTBANK logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO.
- T9® is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance



Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

- The microSD™ logo and microSDHC™ logo are trademarks. 
- Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, Wi-Fi logo and Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™, WMM™, WPA™, WPA2™ and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
  - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
  - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LAWhen you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® LE technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.  This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® LE software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 1996-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights

## Before Using This Guide

reserved.

Adobe Reader LE Copyright© 1984-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full® are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.
- Machi-Uta™ is a trademark of KDDI CORPORATION.
- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD. ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.



©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved. This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.


- This product is equipped with NetFront Document Viewer by ACCESS CO., LTD. as document viewer function. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD. ©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved. ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Bluetooth and the Bluetooth logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. NEC Corporation is granted a license for their use from Bluetooth SIG, Inc. Other trademarks and names belong to their respective owners.
- Multitask, Emotion-Expressing Mail, Privacy Angle, Life History Viewer, Quick Info, Desktop info, Quick Album, Word Prediction, TomoDen, Tomomato-Mail BOX and FontAvenue are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC Corporation.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S.



Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.

- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- Hyper Clear Voice is commercially available based on the license for SRS VIP+ technology from SRS Labs, Inc. SRS, VIP+, and the  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- TruMedia and Dialog Clarity technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc. Trumedia, Dialog Clarity, SRS and the  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, visit "GPL・LGPL等について" at <http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>
- FrameSolid™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the frame interpolation function. FrameSolid™ is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- PhotoSolid®, MovieSolid®, QuickPanorama™ and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- ImageSurf™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the rapid image display technique. ImageSurf™ is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.



- This product is equipped with the font FontAvenue product by NEC Corporation.
- BookSurfing is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., and INFOCITY, Inc.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Edy is a pre-paid electronic money service brand managed by bitWallet, Inc.
- Microsoft, PowerPoint, Excel, Windows, Windows Media and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks in the United States or other countries of Microsoft Corporation (USA).
- Microsoft Windows Operating System is indicated in its abbreviated form as Windows.
- OS (Japanese) are abbreviated as follows in this guide.
  - Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
  - Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- This product is antibacterial-coated.  
Antibacterial part: Handset body (excluding Display, keys and terminals)

Inorganic antimicrobial agent, coating:  
JP0122112A0003N

The SIAA logo indicates the quality control and information disclosure for this product conform to the guidelines of the Society of Industrial



Technology for Antimicrobial Articles, as a result of evaluations conducted under ISO 22196.

- AOSS™ is a trademark of Buffalo Inc.
- ©T2i Entertainment
- ©MTI
- ©2009 Konami Sports & Life
- ©Kakaku.com, Inc.
- ©Culture Convenience Club Co.,Ltd.
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.



# Getting Started

<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>	<b>Codes</b> .....	<b>1-20</b>
Basic Key Operations.....	1-3	Security Code.....	1-20
<b>Display</b> .....	<b>1-6</b>	Center Access Code.....	1-20
Display Indicators.....	1-6	Network Password.....	1-20
External Display (Indicator display).....	1-8	<b>Other Basic Information</b> .....	<b>1-21</b>
Switching Display Views.....	1-8	Checking Battery Level.....	1-21
Mobile Widget (Japanese).....	1-9	My Phone Number.....	1-21
<b>USIM Card</b> .....	<b>1-10</b>	Checking Network Status.....	1-21
Before Using USIM Card.....	1-10	Key Illumination.....	1-21
Other Notes on USIM Cards.....	1-10	Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.....	1-21
USIM PINs.....	1-11	Using Wi-Fi.....	1-22
USIM Card Installation.....	1-12	Side Key Guard.....	1-23
<b>Battery &amp; Charger</b> .....	<b>1-13</b>	Using ECO Mode.....	1-23
Notes on Charging Battery.....	1-13		
Battery Installation.....	1-13		
Charging Battery.....	1-15		
<b>Power On/Off</b> .....	<b>1-17</b>		
Power On.....	1-17		
Power Off.....	1-17		
<b>Mobile Manners</b> .....	<b>1-19</b>		
Activating Manner Mode.....	1-19		

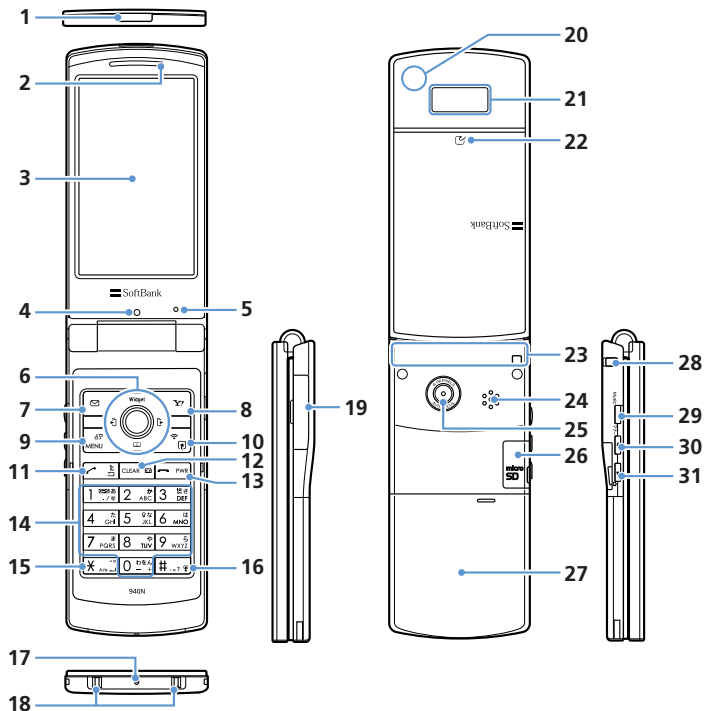
# 1















# Handset Parts

1

Getting Started

















- 1 Infrared Port
- 2 Earpiece
- 3 Display
- 4 Front Camera
- 5 Light Sensor
- 6 Multi Selector 
- 7 Mail Key 
- 8 Yahoo! Keitai Key 
- 9 Menu Key 
- 10 Shortcut Key 
- 11 Send Key 
- 12 Clear/Back Key 
- 13 Power/End Key 
- 14 Keypad 
- 15 \*Key 
- 16 #/Manner Key 
- 17 Microphone
- 18 Charger Terminals
- 19 External Device Port
- 20 Charging Indicator/Illumination
- 21 External Display (Indicator display)
- 22 FeliCa Mark
- 23 Internal Antenna
- 24 Speaker
- 25 Rear Camera
- 26 Memory Card Slot
- 27 Battery Cover
- 28 Strap Eyelet

29 Music Key  Music30 Volume up/Manner Key  77-31 Volume down/Camera Key **Tip**

- TV antenna is built into handset. For optimal signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else. Do not affix stickers over Internal Antenna.
- Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.

**Basic Key Operations****In Standby**

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Access widgets.
	Press and hold 	Open S! Quick News List.
		Open Phone Book Search menu.
		Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold 	Open Received Address List (S! Mail & SMS).
		Open Redial window.
	Press and hold 	Open Sent Address List (S! Mail & SMS).
		Access Desktop Icons/Indicators.
7	Press and hold 	Searches and connects to user-set Wi-Fi access point (Set Wi-Fi function on beforehand) (P. 13-14).
		Open Mail menu.
8	Press and hold 	Open Mail menu.
		Open Yahoo! Keitai portal.
9	Press and hold 	Open Yahoo! menu.
		Open Main Menu.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
10		Activate function assigned to key.
	Press and hold	Set Wi-Fi <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> .
11		Open Tomo-Den Window.
12		Play messages on Answering Machine.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel Answering Machine.
13		Show/hide Desktop Page.
	Press and hold	Turn power on/off.
14	Press and hold	Display current location using GPS function.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel IC Card Lock.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel ECO Mode.
	Press and hold	Set font type, thickness and size.
	Press and hold	Set Privacy Angle on/off.
	Press and hold	Enter “+” (international access code).
16	Press and hold	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
29		Open Original Menu.
	Press and hold	Activate Music Player.
30		View missed calls history and new S! Mail/SMS messages (with handset closed).
	Press and hold	Set/cancel Manner Mode.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
31		Beeps for missed calls or new S! Mail/SMS (handset closed). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two short beeps sound twice: missed calls or new messages</li> <li>• Three short beeps: none</li> </ul>
	Press and hold	Activate Camera in Photo Mode.

## During Voice Calls

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Open Phone Book Search Group menu.
	Press and hold	Continuously increase earpiece volume.
		Open Phone Book Search Column menu.
	Press and hold	Continuously decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
		Open Redial window.
7		Turn handsfree on/off.
8		Toggle Hyper Clear Voice modes (High, OFF or Low).
9		Open Task Switch window.
10		Display function menu.
12		Hold call.

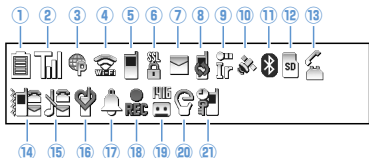
No.	Key/Operations	Description
13		End call.
	Press and hold	Turn power off.
16	Press and hold	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
30		Increase earpiece volume.
31		Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold	Record other party's voice

## During Text Entry

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Insert line feed ↓ (when cursor is at the end of text).
		Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).
7		Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle double-byte and single-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
	Press and hold	Toggle text input methods (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode).
8		Open pictograph/symbol lists.
	Press and hold	Access My Pictograms (in S! Mail).

No.	Key/Operations	Description
11		Cycle characters in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold	Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.
12		Delete one character to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, a character to left is deleted.
	Press and hold	Delete all text to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, delete all text.
15		Enter dakuten (゛) or handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle case (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Insert line feed ↓ .
	Press and hold	Select area.
16		Toggle Shift, Caps Lock and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold	Paste copied or cut text.






















## Display Indicators




- ① Battery Level
- ② Temperature Warning
- ② Signal Strength  
**OUT** Out of Range
- ③ Emission OFF Mode
- ③ USIM Lock Active
- ③ Packet Transmission Available (Yahoo! Keitai)
- ③ Packet Transmission in Progress (Yahoo! Keitai)
- ③ Packet Transmission Available (Dial-up Connection)
- ③ Packet Transmission in Progress (Dial-up Connection)
- ③ Packet Transmission in Progress (Sending/Receiving Data)
- ④ Wi-Fi Signal Strength
- ④ Wi-Fi Out of Range


- ⑤ Keitai Wi-Fi Available
- ⑤ Wi-Fi Transmission in Progress
- ⑥ SSL Secured Site Connected
- ⑦ Unread S! Mail/SMS
- ⑦ Handset S! Mail/SMS Memory Full
- ⑦ USIM SMS Memory Full ( when there are unread S! Mail/SMS Messages)
- ⑦ Handset S! Mail/SMS & USIM SMS Memory Full
- ⑦ Unread PC Mail
- ⑦ Handset PC Mail Memory Full
- ⑦ Unread S! Mail/SMS & PC Mail ( when USIM SMS Memory Full)
- ⑦ Unread S! Mail/SMS & Handset PC Mail Memory Full ( when USIM SMS Memory Full)
- ⑦ Handset S! Mail/SMS & PC Mail Memory Full ( when USIM SMS Memory Full)
- ⑦ Unread PC Mail & USIM SMS Memory Full ( when USIM SMS Memory Full)
- ⑦ Handset PC Mail & USIM SMS Memory Full ( when USIM SMS Memory Full)
- ⑧ Software Updated
- ⑧ Side Key Guard On
- ⑧ IC Card Lock Active
- ⑧ Side Key Guard & IC Card Lock Settings
- ⑨ Infrared Transmission
- ⑨ Authenticating IC Card
- ⑨ S! Addressbook Back-up Synchronizing
- ⑨ Dial Lock Active
- ⑨ Original Lock Active
- ⑨ Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ⑨ Original Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ⑩ GPS Tracking
- ⑩ Pedometer ON
- ⑪ (Blue) Bluetooth Device Connected
- ⑪ (Black) Bluetooth Power Save Mode
- ⑪ Bluetooth Device in Use (Call in Progress)
- ⑫ Memory Card Inserted
- ⑫ Invalid Memory Card Inserted
- ⑫ Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use
- ⑫ Accessing Memory Card

- 13  Voice Call
-  Video Call
-  Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
-  /  /  USB Cable Connected  
(Communication, microSD or MTP Mode)
-  /  microSD/MTP Mode
-  /  /  Handsfree Device Connected  
(Communication, microSD or MTP Mode)
-  /  /  USB Cable/Handsfree Device Connected  
(Communication, microSD or MTP Mode)
- 14  Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages
-  /  Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/Messages
- 15  No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
-  /  No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/Messages
- 16  Manner Mode
-  Auto Manner Mode Start On
-  Auto Manner Mode Release On

- 17  Alarm Set
-  Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)
- 18  One Seg Timer Recording in Progress
- 19  New Messages at Voice Mail Center
-  Answering Machine On
-  New Voice Calls
-  New Video Calls
-  New Voice & Video Calls
-  Auto Voice Memo On
-  New Auto Voice Memos
-  Answering Machine & Auto Voice Memo On
-  New Voice Calls
-  New Video Calls
-  New Auto Voice Memos
-  New Voice & Video Calls
-  New Voice Calls & Auto Voice Memos
-  New Video Calls & Auto Voice Memos
-  New Voice & Video Calls, Auto Voice Memos
- 20  ECO Mode
-  Privacy Angle On ( when Backlight is Off)

- 21  Keypad Lock Active (*After Closed or Timer is ON*)

## Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:  
           

## External Display (Indicator display)

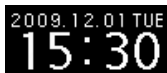


- ① Battery Level
- ② Unread Messages
- Handset Message Memory Full
- USIM SMS Memory Full  
( when there are unread messages)
- Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full
- ③ Manner Mode
- ④ Voice Call
- Video Call
- ⑤ Packet Transmission Available  
(Yahoo! Keitai)
- Packet Transmission in Progress  
(Yahoo! Keitai)
- Packet Transmission in Progress  
(Sending/Receiving Data)
- ⑥ Signal Strength
- OUT** Out of Range
- Emission OFF Mode

## Animation

Handset status and new information appear on External Display.

### Examples



Clock (Digital 1)



Alarm



Incoming Call



Missed Call/  
New Mail (S! Mail/SMS)



On hold



TV Timer Recording



Emotion-Expressing  
Mail



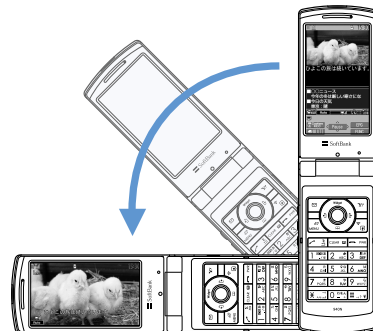
IC card  
authentication

### Tip

- External Display may be hard to see when outdoors or under strong light.

## Switching Display Views

Rotate handset 90° counterclockwise to switch Display to Landscape View. Use this feature for Camera, TV and file playback (My Picture, Videos or TV).



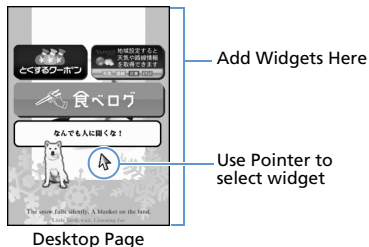
### Tip

- Unavailable in ECO Mode.
- For TV or program playback, Landscape View is also available by turning handset 90° clockwise.


## Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Set Widgets to appear on Desktop.

- For information about Mobile Widget, see P. 10-2.



### Note

- Flash® wallpaper pauses when accessing widgets. To resume Flash®, press  to hide widgets and open any window. Flash® resumes in Standby. To deactivate widgets, set *Standby Disp. Set.* (P. 14-27) to *OFF*.

## More Features

### Customize

#### Style Mode Settings

- Set Display Design Collectively
- Check Style Mode Settings
- Edit Title of a Style
- Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite
- Change Each Item for Favorites
- Clear All Favorite Settings

(▶ P. 14-3)

#### Display Settings

- Wallpaper
- Show Calendar in Standby
- Set Wallpaper Image to Change When Handset Returns to Standby
- Display Color Scheme
- Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design
- Interface Language
- Set Auto-change Screen
- Guard from Prying Eyes
- Set Effect for Screen Change
- Display Quality

(▶ P. 14-3)

#### Backlight

- Set Backlight & Power Saving
- Set Brightness of Backlight

(▶ P. 14-5)

#### Standby Indicators

- Enable Indicator Selector

(▶ P. 14-7)

#### External Display (Indicator display)

- Notifications/Animation
- Set Clock Pattern
- Set Messages to Appear
- Set Time Signal
- Set Viewable Time

(▶ P. 14-8)

#### Closed Illumination

- Set Flashing Color for Handset Close
- Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close

(▶ P. 14-29)

#### Key Backlight

- Set Key Backlight Color

(▶ P. 14-30)



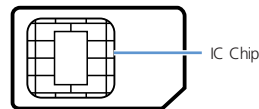
## Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

## Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



## USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

### PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When *PIN1 Code Entry Set* is set to *ON*, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

### PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

### PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).

### Note

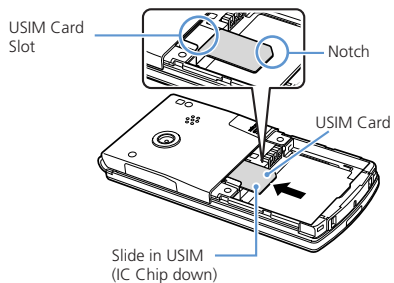
- If PIN1 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, USIM Card locks and handset cannot be used.
- If PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, operations that require PIN2 will become unusable.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).

## USIM Card Installation

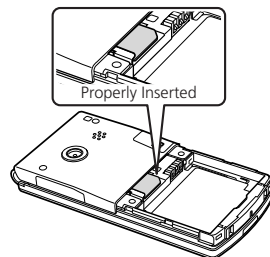
- Remove Battery (P. 1-14) before inserting or removing USIM Card.

### Insertion

#### 1 Slide in USIM Card (IC chip facing down)



#### 2 Push USIM Card in completely



### Removal

#### 1 Slide USIM Card out gently

## Notes on Charging Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-61).
- If Charging Indicator flashes red during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-61).
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.
- Check the battery type on its label:

Mark	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal.

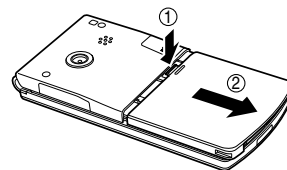


## Battery Installation

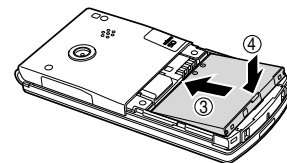
- When installing Battery, make sure Battery is oriented correctly.

### Insertion

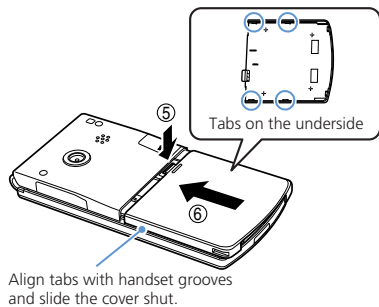
#### 1 Press and slide Battery cover off



#### 2 Align battery and handset terminals then insert battery



## 3 Replace cover



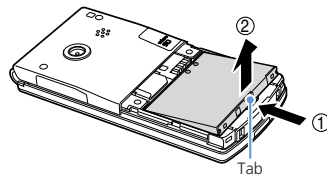
### Note

- Do not force Battery Cover shut. Tab may be misaligned and cause breakage.

## Removal

- Turn off handset before removing battery.

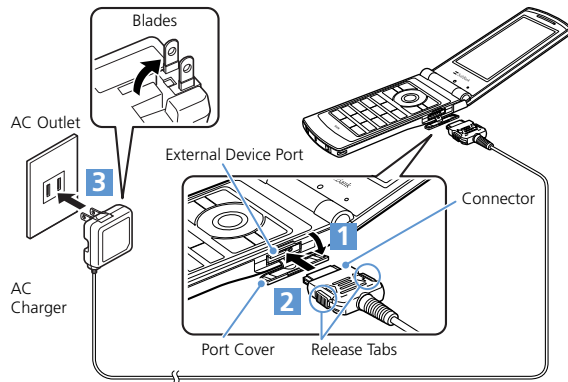
- 1 Remove Battery cover
- 2 Press (1) and lift out (2)



## Charging Battery

### Using AC Charger

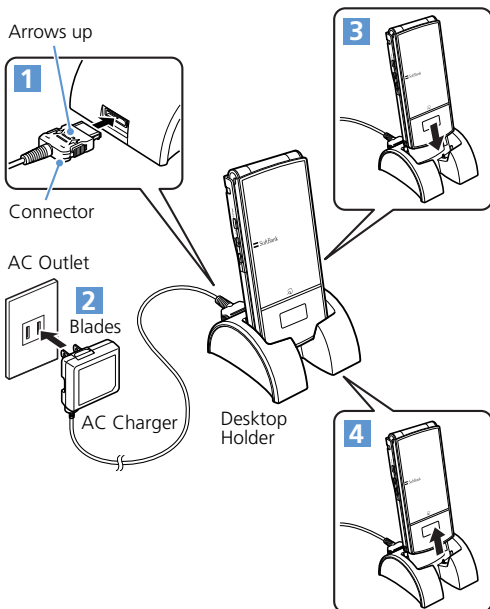
Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger (ZTDAA1, sold separately).



- 1** Open Port Cover
- 2** Insert Charger connector into External Device Port
- 3** Extend Charger blades and plug into an AC Outlet  
Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.
- 4** Disconnect connector from handset  
Press and hold Release Tabs to remove connector.
- 5** Unplug Charger from AC Outlet
- 6** Close Port Cover

## Using Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder is sold separately.



**1** Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder



**2** Plug Charger into an AC Outlet

**3** Place handset in Desktop Holder

Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

**4** Lift out

### Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- When both Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  go out and **Charge Unusual Stop Charge** appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty or a non-specified charger is being used. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-61).
- When both Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  flash, handset temperature is unsuitable for charging (Temperature Warning). Wait until handset cools down.

## More Features

### Customize

#### Backlight

- Set Backlight during Charging

[▶ P. 14-5](#)

#### Sounds

- Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

[▶ P. 14-10](#)

## Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

### 1 Press and hold



### Tip

- Power-on message (WELCOME) may appear on Display for a while when turning on handset immediately after turning power off or inserting battery.
- After USIM Card is replaced, Security Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down. Turn handset on again.

## Initial Setup

Setup prompt appears in Japanese the first time handset is turned on. Select **NO** and press **OK** to exit. Change interface language to English (P. 14-5) and restart handset to perform setup as follows.

### 1 [Initial Settings] window **YES**



#### ▶ To Automatically Enter Date & Time **Auto** Select a time zone



#### ▶ To Manually Enter Date & Time **Manual (Date Time Set)** Select a time zone Enter date and time

### 2 Enter Security Code (9999)



 Enter new Security Code  

 **YES** 

### 3 Select a font size

Select **Separate Setting** to customize font per window (P. 14-4).




### 4 [Keypad Sound Setting] window

 **ON or OFF** 













### Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears after setup is complete.
- The default Security Code is 9999.

## Retrieving Network Information

When ,  or , is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select **YES** to update network settings.

### Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.
- To manually update network settings:  
  **Settings**    **Connection Settings**    **Retrieve NW Info**    **YES** 

## Power Off

### 1 Press and hold

Handset shuts down.



## More Features

### Customize

#### Clock

- Hide Clock
- Clock Size
- Clock Color
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)
- Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)

(▶ P. 14-2)

#### Auto Power On/Off

- Set Auto Power On/Off

(▶ P. 14-3)

#### Display Settings

- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Type
- Set Font Thickness
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

(▶ P. 14-4)

#### Sounds

- Set Key Sound Off
- Set Handset Open/Close Sound

(▶ P. 14-10)

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Power On/Off

(▶ P. 14-30)

#### Resetting Handset

- Reset All Settings to Default
- Initialize Handset to Default Status

(▶ P. 14-33)

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

## Activating Manner Mode

Mute handset sound.

- 1 Press and hold **#**

### Note

- When handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls, be careful as handset may slide off, slide into a stove, etc.
- The other party may hear a short beep if Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.

### Tip

- Press and hold **#** again to cancel Manner Mode.
- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold **#** to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.
- Set or cancel Manner Mode by pressing and holding **77**.

## More Features

### Customize

#### Manner Mode

- Set Manner Mode Type
- Configure Original Manner Mode
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release
- Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off

(▶ P. 14-10)

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others. Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

## Security Code










Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Security Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security Code.

### Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

## Changing Security Code

- 1  → **Settings** →  → **Security** →  → **Change Security Code** →  → 
- 2 Enter current Security Code → 
- 3 Enter new Security Code →  →  → **YES** → 

## Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

## Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.






- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

## Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

### Battery Level Indicator

Appears at top of Display or on External Display.

-  81% to 100% Battery Level
-  61% to 80% Battery Level
-  41% to 60% Battery Level
-  21% to 40% Battery Level
-  0% to 20% Battery Level

### Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

- 1  → **Settings** →  → **Other Settings** →  → **Battery Level** → 

Battery Level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.

Five beeps:

81% to 100% Battery Level

Four beeps:

61% to 80% Battery Level

Three beeps:

41% to 60% Battery Level

Two beeps:

21% to 40% Battery Level

One beep:

0% to 20% Battery Level

### Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

### When Battery Is Empty

*Recharge Battery* appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

## My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

- 1  → 

Account Details appear.

### ■ Add Other Information

-  → Enter Security Code →  →
- Select an item →  → Enter information → 

### ■ View All Information

-  → **Display All Data** →  →
- Enter Security Code →  →
-  to switch tabs (→ )

### ■ Reset Account Details

-  → **Reset** →  → Enter Security Code →  → **YES** → 

## Checking Network Status

Check Network Status to confirm if voice calls and/or packet transmission is available.

- 1  → **Settings** →  → **Other Settings** →  → **Network Status** → 

Network information appears.

## Key Illumination

Key backlight flashes in a variety of patterns.

## Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

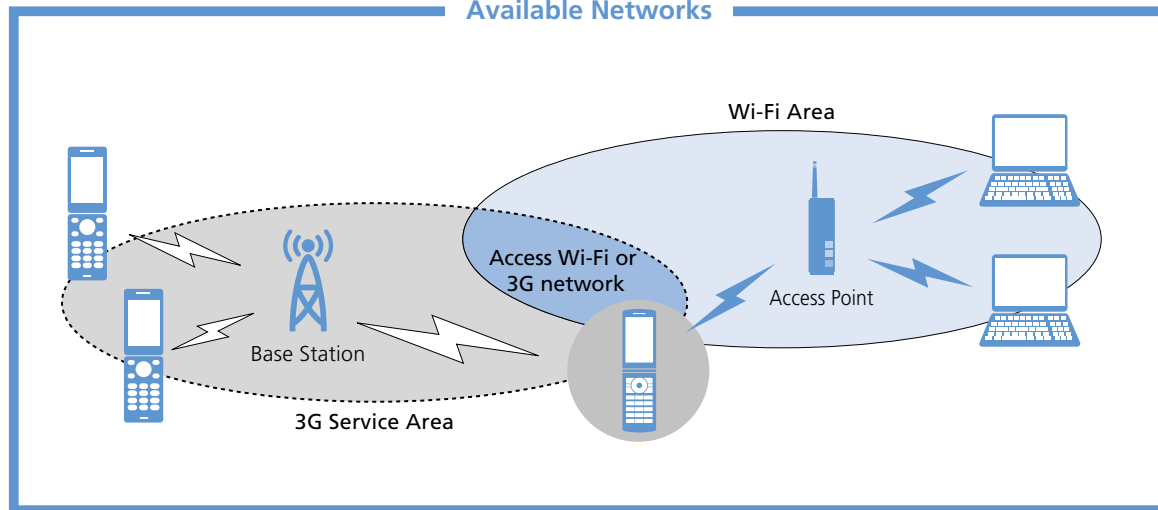
Use Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) to connect earphones. When sound source is monaural (calls, etc.), stereo earphones output monaural sound to left and right earphones; when sound source is stereo, only the left channel is output to monaural earphones.

## Using Wi-Fi

Use Wi-Fi connections for access to the Internet. Select from household network or public networks.

- For details on Wi-Fi configuration, see P. 13-11.

### Available Networks





#### Faster Internet Access with Wi-Fi

- Access the Internet at higher speeds than 3G/GSM networks. With Wi-Fi connection, Internet access is available even outside the 3G network range.
- Access Keitai Wi-Fi or other services for high-speed packet transmission. Download large-size content, stream multimedia files and use PC Site Browser.

## Side Key Guard






Disable Side Keys (MUSIC, 77- and 00) while handset is closed.

1  → Press and hold 

Repeat to cancel setting.

### Tip


- Alternatively, set Side Key Guard by:

 → Settings →  → Other Settings  
→  → Side Key Guard →  → ON or  
OFF → 

## Using ECO Mode

When set to ECO Mode, light, sound and Display settings are modified to decrease battery consumption.



1 Press and hold 

ECO Mode is set, and  appears.

### Note

- ECO Mode is canceled when handset is turned off.
- The other party may hear short beeps if ECO Mode is set or canceled during a call.

### Tip

- Press and hold  again to cancel ECO Mode.
- Press and hold  to set or cancel ECO Mode during a call.

## More Features

### Customize

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Power On/Off
- Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls
- Set Illumination for Call Start
- Set Illumination for Sending/Receiving Messages
- Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail
- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification
- Set Illumination for Snooze Notification
- Set Illumination for Ir/IC Transmission
- Set Illumination for Missed Call or New Message
- Set Illumination for When Handset Opens
- Set Illumination for Special Events

(▶ P. 14-30)



# Basic Operations



<b>Menu Operations</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>2-27</b>
Accessing Handset Functions.....	2-2	Main Menu .....	2-27
Icons/Notifications.....	2-3	Desktop Icons .....	2-27
Info.....	2-6	Text Entry .....	2-28
Navigating through Menus .....	2-7	Templates .....	2-29
<b>Multitask</b> .....	<b>2-9</b>	Dictionaries.....	2-29
Activating Another Function.....	2-9	Phone Book .....	2-30
Toggling Functions.....	2-10	S! Addressbook Back-up .....	2-32
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	<b>2-11</b>		
Overview.....	2-11		
Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode.....	2-12		
Editing Text .....	2-14		
Editing Templates .....	2-15		
Using Dictionaries .....	2-15		
Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode.....	2-16		
Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode.....	2-16		
<b>Phone Book</b> .....	<b>2-19</b>		
Overview.....	2-19		
Creating Phone Book Entries.....	2-20		
Using Phone Book .....	2-21		
Phone Book Settings .....	2-22		
<b>S! Addressbook Back-up</b> .....	<b>2-25</b>		
Overview.....	2-25		
Using S! Addressbook Back-up.....	2-25		

## 2





## Accessing Handset Functions

- In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

### From Main Menu

Press to open Main Menu. Use () to select an item and press to open sub menus.



Main Menu

### Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after 15 seconds of inactivity.

## Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

### Softkeys

- : Open Mail menu.
- (Press and hold): Open Yahoo! menu.
- : Access the function assigned to the key.

### Multi Selector

- : Open Active Desktop Page.
- : Open Phone Book Search window.
- : Open Received Calls window.
- : Open Redial window.

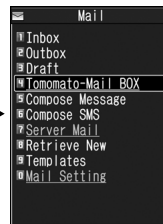
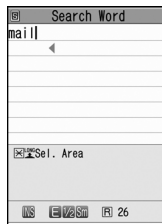
## Keyword Search

Enter a keyword to search function/menu items.

1

2 Enter a keyword

<Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding items are underlined.

3 or to select an item

### Tip

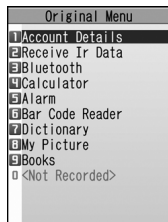
- To search for PC Mail functions/menus, set *Priority Mail Menu* (P. 14-19) to PC Mail.



## From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.

1 →



Press to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.

## Enter Menu Item Number

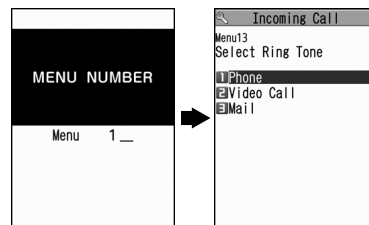
Enter these numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to **Basic**.

- See P. 15-21 for menu item numbers.
- See P. 2-27 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access **Select Ring Tone** (menu no. 13)

1

2 →



## Icons/Notifications

Add functions to Icon Window and use them as shortcuts. Notifications appear to inform you of missed calls, new S! Mail/SMS messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information. The following shortcuts are set by default.

- Wi-Fiコンテンツを探す (Wi-Fi Contents)\*
  - メニューリスト (Menu List)\*
  - 各種手続・料金 (Manage Account/Fees)\*
  - 待ちうた (Machi-Uta™)\*
  - S! Quick News List\*    • TV
  - Photo Mode                • Quick Search
- \* Links to Japanese page. Requires network connection.



Icons



# Menu Operations

2

Basic Operations

## Icons

Icon	Function
	Wi-Fi コンテンツを探す Wi-Fi Contents
	メニューリスト Menu List
	各種手続・料金 Manage Account/Fees
	待ちうた Machi-Uta™
	S! Quick News List
	TV
	Photo Mode
	Quick Search
	Call Phone Number
	Compose S! Mail

Icon	Function
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody
	Show Image
	Play Video
	S! Appli
	Inbox Folder (S! Mail/SMS)
	Movie Mode
	Voice Mode
	Schedule

Icon	Function
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	Life History Viewer
	Calculator
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Bluetooth
	Original Menu



Icon	Function
	PC Site Browser
	Books
	Open PDF Files
	Play/Erase Msg.
	Play/Erase VC Msg.
	Pedometer
	Illumination

### Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
	Missed Calls
	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.

Icon	Function/Information
	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.
	Voice Mail
	New S! Mail/SMS Messages
	Missed Alarms
	Missed TV Programs
	Timer Recording Finished
	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
	Software Update
	USB Mode Communication

Icon	Function/Information
	Network Re-search
	New S! Info Channel
	S! Info Channel Reception Failure
	New Weather Info.
	Weather Info. Reception Failure
	View Content Keys*

Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information. Answering Machine and Voice Mail notifications disappear after message is played back.

\* Content key icon disappears after content keys are checked or deleted.



# Menu Operations

## Adding Icons

Add up to 15 icons.

1 From a function  $\Rightarrow$   $\square$   $\Rightarrow$  **Add Desktop Icon**  $\Rightarrow$   $\odot$  ( $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\odot$ )

### Tip

- Alternatively,  $\odot \Rightarrow \square \Rightarrow$  **Create Icon**  $\Rightarrow$   $\odot \Rightarrow$  Select function  $\Rightarrow$   $\odot \Rightarrow$  Select a Theme  $\Rightarrow$   $\odot$

## Accessing Icons & Notifications

1  $\odot$



Icon Window

2  $\odot$   $\Rightarrow$  **Select an icon**  $\Rightarrow$   $\odot$

■ **Scrolling Icons**



## Info

Phone numbers, functions, etc. saved to Icon Window appear in Info Window.

## Accessing Data and Functions

Press  $\square$  to toggle Info Window and Icon Window.

1  $\odot \Rightarrow \square$



Info Window

Desktop opens to previously used window.

2  $\odot$   $\Rightarrow$  **Select an item**  $\Rightarrow$   $\odot$

## Items

Item	Details
What's New	Access/view Notifications (P. 2-5).
Unread messages	Access new S! Mail/SMS messages.
Schedule	<b>Schedule</b> Access schedule events (today/tomorrow).
	<b>To Do List</b> Access To Do List entries.
Shortcuts	Access Icons saved to Icon Window.
Phonebook	<b>Phone Number</b> Access phone numbers from Icon Window.
	<b>E-mail address</b> Select e-mail address (from Icon Window) to Create S! Mail.
Bookmarks	<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> Access bookmarked sites.
	<b>PC Site Browser</b> Access bookmarked sites.

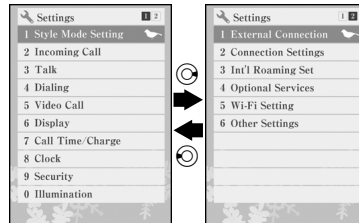


Item	Details
Images & Movies	Still images Open image.
	Video Play video.
Calendar	Open Calendar.
Clock	Access Alarm list (Set Main Time window appears when clock is not set).
Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set items on/off.</li> <li>• Change item order.</li> </ul>

## Navigating through Menus

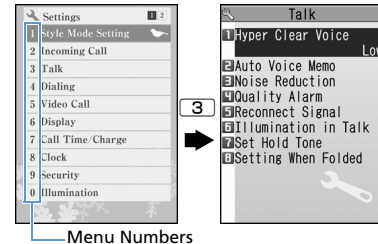
### Scrolling Pages

Use or ( or ) to scroll next/previous pages.



## Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



## Return to Previous Window or Standby

Press to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press to return to Standby.

● May not apply to all functions/windows.



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Main Menu

- Change Main Menu Theme
- Switch to Simple Menu
- Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

(▶ P. 2-27)

#### Desktop Icons

- Delete Notifications
- Edit Title of a Desktop Icon
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Order of Desktop Icons
- Delete Desktop Icons
- Reset Desktop Icons
- Change Theme of Desktop Icons
- Show/Hide Desktop Icons

(▶ P. 2-27)

### Customize

#### Display Settings

- Set Softkey Color

(▶ P. 14-4)

#### Desktop Icons

- Set Desktop Theme
- Change Icon Design of a Theme
- Change Order of Icons of a Theme
- Copy Icons to Another Theme

- Move Icons to Another Theme
- Delete Icons of a Theme
- Set New S! Mail/SMS Indicator in 3D

(▶ P. 14-6)

#### Menu Display Settings

- List View and Details View
- Set Main Menu Theme
- Change Icon Design (Original Theme)
- Change Background (Original Theme)
- Reset Original Theme Settings
- Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- Add a Menu Item to Original Menu
- Change Order of Original Menu Items
- Cancel Original Menu Items
- Reset Original Menu

(▶ P. 14-7)

#### Shortcut Key

- Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

(▶ P. 14-29)



Activate one function per group at one time.

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Group	Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera
TV & Music Group	TV, Music

- See P. 15-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Confirm currently active tasks in Tasks Bar.



Tasks Bar

- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

## Activating Another Function


Activate another function without exiting current function.

### 1 While using a function ⇒ ⇒

#### ▶ To Activate Function from Main Menu

 ⇒ Select another function ⇒ ●

#### ▶ Mobile Widget

 ⇒ Select a widget ⇒ ●

#### ▶ Mail Function



#### ▶ To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal



#### ▶ To Activate Function Assigned to Shortcut Key



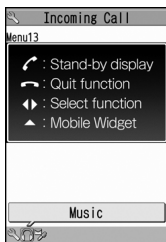




2

## 2 Toggling Functions

1 When multiple functions are active ⇨



Task Switch Window

To go to Standby, press

Press to reopen Task Switch window.

2 ⇨ Select a task indicator ⇨

### Tip

- To End Multitask:  
[Task Switch] window ⇨ ⇨ *Quit Selected* or *Quit All Function* ⇨
- Alternatively, press and hold to return to Standby while current functions remain active.



Handset has three text input methods:

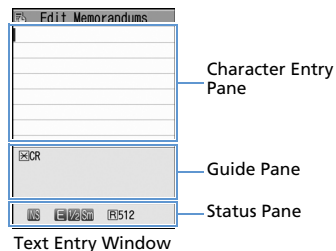
5-touch, 2-touch and T9 Input.

- This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

## Overview

### Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator and key descriptions are as follows:



### Character Entry Pane

	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

### Guide Pane

▲▼ CHG	⊙ to convert characters
▲▼ All	⊙ to search Phone Book
▲▼ Search	
◀▶	⊙ to specify a text range to copy/cut
▲▼ Area	
⊗ CR	⌘ to insert line feed
⊗ A/a	⌘ to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten ( ` )/handakuten ( ` )
⊞ AA → aa	⌘ to cancel Caps Lock mode
⊞ aa → Aa	⌘ to set Shift mode
⊞ Aa → AA	⌘ to set Caps Lock mode
⊗ Sel. Area	Press and hold ⌘ to select area of text to copy (cut).
⊞ Paste	Press and hold ⌘ to paste copied or cut text.
↶ Back	↶ to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え → ゅ)

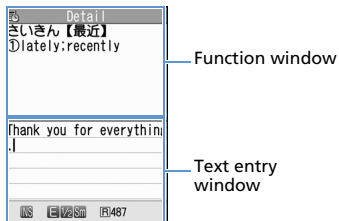
### Status Pane

2 ②	Text input method (2-touch/T9 Input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode
Ⓜ Ⓜ Ⓜ Ⓜ	Character entry mode
Ⓜ	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-29)
1/2 1/2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case input mode
Sm Ⓜ	Shift/Caps Lock mode
R	Bytes remaining for text entry
Ln	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message)



## Split Windows

In some instances, a second window opens with text entry window.



Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

## Switching Windows

Press **[R]** and select *Change Window* to switch windows.

## Changing Text Input Methods

- 1 **[Text Entry] window** ⇨ **[R]** ⇨ **CHG Input Method** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select a text input method** ⇨ ●  
Alternatively, press and hold **[R]**.

## Toggling Character Entry Modes

- 1 **[Text Entry] window** ⇨ **[R]**  
Press **[R]** to toggle entry modes.  
Kanji/hiragana → Katakana →  
Alphanumerics → Numbers

### Tip

- In 2-touch mode, press **[R]** to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

## Interruptions during Text Entry

### When Battery Runs Out

Battery alarm sounds and *Recharge Battery* appears. Text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry. Text may not be saved depending on the function.

### When **[END]** is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press ● to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press ●.

### When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window returns.

## Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.  
● For key assignment, see P. 15-11.

## Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

## Using Word Prediction

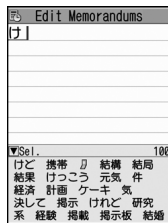
Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow. Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use Word Prediction.



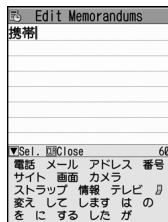
<Example> Entering “携帯電話”

**1** [Text Entry] window → **2**  
(four times)

“け” is entered in Character Entry Pane.  
Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with “け” in Guide Pane.



**2** → Select “携帯” →



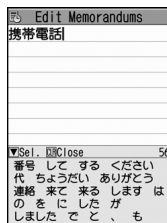
“携帯” appears in Character Entry Pane.  
A suggestion list of words that follow  
“携帯” appears in Guide Pane.

■ When Required Word Does Not Appear



Continue hiragana (reading) entry in  
Character Entry Pane to narrow down  
selection.

**3** → Select “電話” →



■ To Exit Suggestion List



### Tip

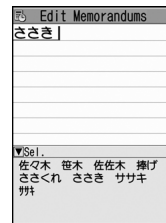
- Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold **CLEAR** to delete an added word from the suggestion list.

## Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering “佐々木”

**1** [Text Entry] window → **3** (once)  
→ → **3** (once) → **2** (twice)



**2** →

■ To Determine Entered Hiragana without  
Converting It



**3** Select a word →

■ To Change Conversion Range





## Dakuten ( ` ) & Handakuten ( ˘ )

<Example> Entering “が”

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [2] (once) ⇨ [ \* ] ⇨ [ ● ]

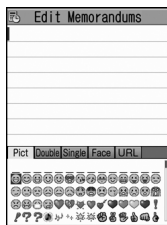
## Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change “つ” to “つ”

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [4] (three times) ⇨ [ \* ] ⇨ [ ● ]

## Pictographs & Symbols

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [ Y ]



- 2 Select a pictograph/symbol ⇨ [ ● ]  
Press [ ] or [ Y ] to toggle pictograph/symbol categories.

## To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry

⇨ [ R ]

- 3 [ CLEAR ]

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

## Emoticons

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [ R ] ⇨ **Face Mark** ⇨ [ ● ]

- 2 Select an emoticon ⇨ [ ● ]

## Common Phrases (Templates)

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [ R ] ⇨ **Common Phrases** ⇨ [ ● ]

- 2 Select a folder ⇨ [ ● ] ⇨ Select a phrase ⇨ [ ● ] (twice)

## Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ Enter hiragana ⇨ [ Y ] ⇨ Select a character ⇨ [ ● ]

## Editing Text

### Deletion & Correction

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ Move cursor to the left of the character to delete ⇨ [ CLEAR ]

### To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor

⇨ Press and hold [ CLEAR ]

### To Delete Entire Text

⇨ Move cursor to the end of text ⇨ Press and hold [ CLEAR ]

- 2 Position cursor ⇨ Enter correct characters

## Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

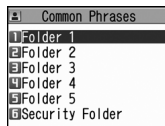
- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [ R ] ⇨ **Copy or Cut** ⇨ [ ● ]



- 2 Move cursor to beginning of characters → ●
- 3 Move cursor to end of characters → ●
- 4 Position cursor → [P] → **Paste** → ●

## Editing Templates

- 1 [MENU] → **Own Data** → ● → **Common Phrases** → ●



Templates (Common phrases) Window

- 2 Select a folder → ● (→ Enter Security Code → ●)



Templates List

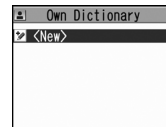
- 3 Select an entry → [P] → Enter text → ● (→ Enter title → ●)

## Using Dictionaries

### Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

- 1 [MENU] → **Own Data** → ● → **Own Dictionary** → ●



Own Dictionary Window

- 2 <New> → ● → Enter word → ● → Enter reading → ●

### Tip

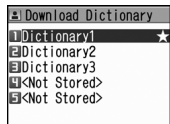
- To check saved words: Select a word → ●



## Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Download dictionaries from Yahoo! Keitai sites. Dictionary must be enabled in advance.

- 1 ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ ⇒ **DL Dictionary** ⇒



Downloaded Dictionary Window

- 2 Select a dictionary ⇒

★ appears next to the enabled dictionary.

### Tip

- To disable a dictionary: [Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇒ Select a dictionary with ★ ⇒
- If an emoticon dictionary is enabled, its content is reflected in the emoticon list when entering emoticons.

## Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see P. 15-12.
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-12).

### <Example> Entering “キャンブ”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇒ (き) ⇒ (change to lower case mode) ⇒ (ゃ) ⇒ (change to upper case mode) ⇒ (ん) ⇒ (ふ) ⇒ (° )

- 2 ⇒

### Tip

- Pressing also adds dakuten (° ) and handakuten (° ) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.

## Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

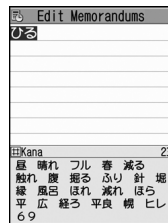
Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

- For key assignment, see P. 15-13.
- When character entry mode is “Number,” 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

### <Example> Entering “春”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇒ (row は) ⇒ (row 5)  
Word predictions for the key combination appear.



### ■ To Change Conversion Range





### ■ Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists

⇒ #

### ■ Toggle English and Japanese Suggestion Lists

⇒ ☐

## 2

☐ ⇒ ☐

Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

### ■ To Show Converted Words on Suggestion List

⇒ /P

For example, if you specify “はる,” then “張る,” “貼る” and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

### ■ To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List

⇒ ☐

For example, if you specify “はる,” then “春休み,” “遥か” and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

### ■ To Exit Suggestion List and Continue Character Entry

⇒ CLEAR

## 3

●

## Re-entering Words

Re-enter as shown below if the desired word does not appear.

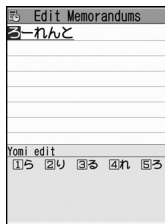
<Example> Entering “らんらんと”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

1 [Text Entry] window ⇒ 9 (row ら) ⇒ 0 (row わ) ⇒ 9 (row ら) ⇒ 0 (row わ) ⇒ 4 (row た)  
 “らんらんと” does not appear in suggestion list.

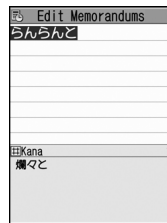
## 2

☐



Cursor is on the first character of the word. The edit window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row “ら” appear.

3 1 (ら) ⇒ 3 (ん) ⇒ 1 (ら) ⇒ 3 (ん) ⇒ 5 (と)



### ■ If No Correction is Necessary

⇒ ☐ to move cursor to the next character

### ■ To End Re-entering a Word

⇒ /P

The words predicted/converted from the re-entered word appear on the suggestion list.

## 4

●





## More Features

### Advanced

#### Text Entry

- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- Undo Last Operation
- Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Quote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

**(▶ P. 2-28)**

#### Templates

- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

**(▶ P. 2-29)**

#### Dictionaries

- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries
- Edit Title
- View Information
- Delete Dictionaries

**(▶ P. 2-29)**

### Customize

#### Text Entry

- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size
- Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode

**(▶ P. 14-29)**



## Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

### Contacts & Settings

#### Entry Items

- Name & Reading
- Group
- 4 Phone Numbers
- 3 E-mail Addresses
- Address
- Location Information
- Birthday
- Memo
- Still Image
- Entry Number

#### Custom Settings

- Incoming Ringtone
- Incoming Image
- Illumination
- Vibration
- Outgoing Message

#### Others

- Secret Data



### Handy Functions

#### Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-12).

#### Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den (P. 3-12).

#### Reject Calls

Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-6).

### ● Back Up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.



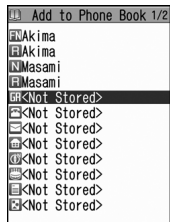
## Creating Phone Book Entries

<Example> Enter a name, phone number, e-mail address and specify a group

1 → **Phone Book** → → → **Add to Phone Book** → → **Phone** →

2 → **Enter family name** → → **Check reading** → → **N** → → **Enter first name** → → **Check reading** →

Reading is entered automatically. Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

3 → **Select a group** →

4 → → **Enter phone number** → → **Select an icon** → To save additional numbers, select <Not Stored> and repeat the same step.

5 → → **Enter e-mail address** → → **Select an icon** → To save additional addresses, select <Not Stored> and repeat the same step.

6

## Setting Incoming Image

1 **[Phone Book Entry] window** → → **To Capture an Image with Camera Photo Mode** → Capture image → **To Select an Image in Data Folder Select Image** → Select a folder → Select a still image →

### Tip

- To cancel selected image, select *Release This* and press .

## Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from:

- Received calls
- Dialed Calls
- Redial
- Text Reader
- Bar Code Reader
- Receive/Sent Address List (S! Mail & SMS)
- Yahoo! Keitai
- Phone Number Entry window

<Example> Create an entry from Received Calls

1 → **Select a record** → → **Add to Phone Book** → → **Phone** → **To Save as New Entry New** → **To Add to Existing Entry Add** → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice) Phone number is entered. **2 Enter other items** → ( → **YES** →



## Resuming Phone Book Edit Operation

If battery is empty or if another function was activated while editing an entry, resume operation as follows:

- 1** MENU → Phone Book → ● → [P] → Add to Phone Book → ● → Phone → ● → Recall → ●
- 2** Enter each item → [OK] (→ YES → ●)

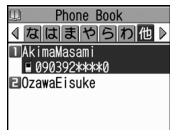
### Tip

- Save entry before you exit Phone Book. Otherwise, all changes will be lost.

## Using Phone Book

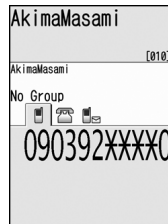
### Dialing from Phone Book

- 1** MENU → Phone Book → ●



Phone Book Entry List

- 2** [P] or [Y] to switch tabs → ● → ● → Select an entry → ●



Entry Details

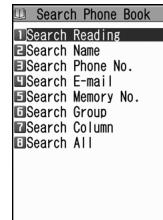
- 3** ● → Select a number → [OK] Press [OK] for video calls.

### Tip

- Alternatively, select a phone number from Phone Book Entry List and press [OK] to make a call. If there are multiple entries, the first number is called.

## Specifying a Search Method

- 1** ●



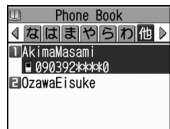
Phone Book Search Window

- 2** Select a search method → ●
  - Search Reading:** Enter a reading and press ●.
  - Search Name:** Enter a name and press ●.
  - Search Phone No.:** Enter a phone number and press ●.
  - Search E-mail:** Enter an e-mail address and press ●.
  - Search Memory No.:** Enter three-digit entry number.
  - Search Group:** Select a group to view saved entries.
  - Search Column:** Press a key (1 - 0) or (\*) to access the tab corresponding to that key.



## Search All:

Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List

## Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by

## Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List (S! Mail & SMS).

### Access Entries from Received Calls

- 1 → → → **Look-up Phone Book** →

### Access Entries from Dialed Calls

- 1 → **Own Data** → → **Dialed Calls** → → → **Look-up Phone Book** →

### Access Entries from Redial

- 1 → → → **Look-up Phone Book** →

### Access Entries from Received Address List (S! Mail & SMS)

- 1 Press and hold → → → **Look-up Phone Book** →

### Access Entries from Sent Address List (S! Mail & SMS)

- 1 Press and hold → → → **Look-up Phone Book** →

## Phone Book Settings

### Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

### Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



- Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
- Ringtone (Mail)
- Illumination (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination (Mail)
- Vibrator (Incoming Calls)
- Vibrator (Mail)
- Incoming Image (Calls)
- Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)



## To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

- 1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ⇨ **Ring Tone/Image** ⇨
- 2 **Voice Call (Recv.)** ⇨
- 3 **Ring Tone** ⇨ ⇨ Select a ringtone type ⇨ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ) (⇨ Select a ringtone ⇨ )

## To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

- 1 [Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ ⇨ **Group Setting** ⇨
- 2 Select a group ⇨ ⇨ **Ring Tone/Image** ⇨
- 3 **Mail (Recv.)** ⇨
- 4 **Illumination** ⇨ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨

### Note

- Custom Settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom Settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.

### Tip

- To cancel Custom Settings, select an item with ★ and press .

## Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

- 1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ⇨ **Restrictions** ⇨
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇨
- 3 Select a restriction type ⇨ 

**Restrict Dialing:**  
Permit outgoing calls to only one number. Note that the number can only be dialed from Phone Book.

### Call Rejection:

Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

### Call Acceptation:

Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

### Tip

- ★ indicates currently set restriction; to cancel, select the setting and press .

## When Restrict Dialing is Set

The following operations are disabled:

- Dialing by Keypad
- Dialing from Received Calls
- Calling from Phone Book (except: calling specified number in Phone Book)

### Tip

- When *Restrict Dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List (S! Mail & SMS) are deleted.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Restrict Dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled. Cancel *Restrict Dialing* to edit or delete.



## Setting Secret Entries

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries.

- Phone Book entries set as secret only appear in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-7).

1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Set Secret** ⇨ ●

### Tip

- To cancel Secret Setting: [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Release Secret** ⇨ ●
- Entries saved while Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is active are saved as secret entries.
- When a Tomo-Den entry is set as a secret entry, the entry's Tomo-Den setting is canceled.

## Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

1 ⇨ **Tools** ⇨ ● ⇨ **USIM Operation** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ●

2 **Copy** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Phone Book** ⇨ ●

3 **Search Phone Book**

4 **Select an entry** ⇨ ●  
Repeat this step to specify other entries.

5 ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

### Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- All handset transmissions are unavailable while copying entries.

## More Features

### Advanced

Saving Additional Information

- Save an Address or Memo
- Save Location Information
- Save Birthday
- Change Entry Number

▶ P. 2-30

Phone Book Search

- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List
  - Change Font Size
  - Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
  - Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book
  - Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book
- ▶ P. 2-30

Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
  - Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
  - Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
  - Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
  - Check Number of Phone Book Entries
  - Edit a Phone Book Entry
  - Copy a Phone Book Entry
  - Check Location Information
  - Send Entries by S! Mail
  - Delete Entries
  - Delete Items from an Entry
  - Delete an Entry from USIM Card
- ▶ P. 2-31

### Customize

Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

▶ P. 14-12



## Overview

Back up handset Phone Book to server.

- Separate subscription required.
- See SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) for details.
- Service subscription activates **Auto Sync Settings** during network information retrieval. Synchronization will automatically begin 10 minutes after you edit Phone Book.
- Even if **Auto Sync Settings** is set to **OFF**, it returns to **Synchronize** after network information is retrieved again.
- After unsubscribing, make sure that **Auto Sync Settings** is set to **OFF**.

## Note

- Fully charge battery beforehand.
- When **Auto Sync Settings** is **ON**, editing entries automatically synchronizes, backs up or downloads updated entries. Packet transmission fees are incurred.
- All data in the server Phone Book will be deleted if **Synchronize**, **Sync From Client** or **Backup** is performed after deleting all data in handset Phone Book.
- All data in handset Phone Book will be deleted if **Synchronize**, **Sync From Server** or **Restore** is performed after deleting all data in the server Phone Book.
- The following Phone Book items are not synchronized.
  - Ring Tone
  - Illumination
  - Vibrator
  - Incoming Call Image

## Using S! Addressbook Back-up

### Synchronizing Phone Book

Connect to Phone Book backed up on server and bring it up to date with handset's Phone Book.

- The first time you synchronize will be in **Synchronize** regardless of the setting.

- Synchronization can be any of the following types.

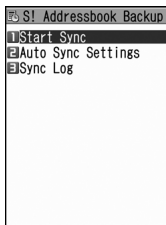
Synchronize	Synchronize handset Phone Book and server Phone Book. Both Phone Books are synchronized with the newest information.
Sync From Client	Copy updated information to server Phone Book.
Sync From Server	Copy update information to handset Phone Book.
Backup	Back up handset Phone Book to server (note that Server Phone Book is deleted).
Restore	Restore server Phone Book to handset (note that handset Phone Book is deleted).





# S! Addressbook Back-up

- 1 MENU ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **S!**  
**Addressbook Back-up** ⇒



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

- 2 **Start Sync** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒

- 3 **Select type of synchronization** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Synchronization starts. Synchronization results appear after completion.

- 4

## Checking Synchronize Log

- 1 [S! Addressbook Back-up] window  
⇒ **Sync Log** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an item** ⇒

## More Features

### Advanced

- S! Addressbook Back-up
- Delete Synchronize Log

▶ P. 2-32)

### Customize

- S! Addressbook Back-up
- Set Auto Synchronize
  - Set Auto Synchronize Off
  - Check Auto Synchronize Settings

▶ P. 14-12)



## Main Menu

### Change Main Menu Theme

Select a pattern ( YES or NO )

### Switch to Simple Menu

Simple Menu ( YES or NO )

In Simple Menu, font size is larger and menu options are limited to basic ones.

### Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

Select a theme

Next time you open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns.

## Desktop Icons

### Delete Notifications

Press and hold CLEAR

Some notifications remain.

### Edit Title of a Desktop Icon

Select an icon F Edit Title

Enter title

### Change Icon Image

Select an icon F CHG Icon Image Select Icon Image

Select a folder Select a file

To reset icon image, select *Default Icon Image* and press .

### Check Icon Information

Select an icon F Icon Info Setting

### Change Order of Desktop Icons

Select an icon F Sort

YES Select a position

### Delete Desktop Icons

Select an icon F Delete

- To Select *Delete This*
  - Delete This YES
- To Select *Delete selected*
  - Delete selected Select icons
  - YES
- To Select *Delete All*
  - Delete All YES

### Reset Desktop Icons

Reset Desktop YES

### Change Theme of Desktop Icons

Change Desktop

Select a theme YES

### Show/Hide Desktop Icons

Display Setting

*Display always* or *Display at Use* ( )

When *Display at Use* is set, Desktop Icons only appear when you press in Standby.



## Text Entry

### Start Here

[Text Entry] window ..... P. 2-11

### Functions Before Entering Text

#### Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

[Text Entry] window → → **Lower Case** or **Upper Case** → ●

#### Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

[Text Entry] window → → **Single-Byte** or **Double-Byte** → ●

### Functions While Entering Text

#### Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

[Text Entry] window → Input a character →

This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

#### Undo Last Operation

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold

#### Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

[Text Entry] window → → **Jump** → ●  
→ **To Beginning** or **To End** → ●

#### Overwrite & Insert Modes

[Text Entry] window → → **Overwrite** or **Insert** → ●

Text entry windows always open in **Insert** mode.

#### Insert Line Feed

[Text Entry] window →

Press to add a space at the end of text.

#### Input a Space

[Text Entry] window → → **Space** → ●

Press to add a space at the end of text.

#### Use Dictionary

[Text Entry] window → → **Refer Dic.** → ●

- To Enter a Word
  - **Enter Word** → ● → Enter word → ●
  - Select a dictionary → ● → Select a word → ●
  - ● → Read descriptions of the word
- To Select Area
  - **Select Area** → ● → Move cursor to beginning of word → ● → Move cursor to end of word → ● → Select a dictionary → ●
  - ● → Select a word → ● → Read descriptions of the word
- To Enter a Word from Search History
  - **Reference History** → ● → Select a word → ● → Select a dictionary → ● → Select a word → ● → Read descriptions of the word



## Quote Text

[Text Entry] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$   $\Rightarrow$  *Quote Data*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry  
 $\Rightarrow$  *Quote Phonebook*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Search Phone Book  $\Rightarrow$  Select a data item to quote text from  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$
- To Quote from Account Details  
 $\Rightarrow$  *Account Details*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter Security Code  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a data item  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$
- To Scan Text by Text Reader  
 $\Rightarrow$  *Text Reader*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Scan text with camera  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{Y} \right]$
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader  
 $\Rightarrow$  *Bar Code Reader*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Scan a bar code with camera  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

## Use Kutten Codes

[Text Entry] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$   $\Rightarrow$  *Kutten Code*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter kutten codes (P. 15-14)

## Templates

### Start Here

[Templates (Common phrases)] window ..... P. 2-15  
[Templates List] ..... P. 2-15

### Edit a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window  $\Rightarrow$   
Select a folder  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$   $\Rightarrow$  *Edit Folder Name*  
 $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter folder name  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

### Reset a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window  $\Rightarrow$   
Select a folder  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$   $\Rightarrow$  *Reset Name*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   
 $\Rightarrow$  *YES*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

### Edit Templates

[Templates List]  $\Rightarrow$  Select a template  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$   
 $\Rightarrow$  *Edit*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Edit phrase  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

## Reset Templates

[Templates List]  $\Rightarrow$  Select a template  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$

- To Select *Delete This*  
 $\Rightarrow$  *Delete This*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  *YES*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$
  - To Select *Delete All*  
 $\Rightarrow$  *Delete All*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter Security Code  
 $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  *YES*  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- $\left[ \text{H} \right]$  User entries are deleted, and preinstalled templates return to default.

## Dictionaries

### Start Here

[Own Dictionary] window ..... P. 2-15  
[Downloaded Dictionary] window .... P. 2-16

## Own Dictionary

### Edit Entries

[Own Dictionary] window  $\Rightarrow$  Select an entry  $\Rightarrow$   $\left[ \text{R} \right]$   $\Rightarrow$  Edit word  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Edit reading  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$



#### Delete Entries

[Own Dictionary] window ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete This*  
⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete selected*  
⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select entries  
⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*  
⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code  
⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

#### Downloaded Dictionaries

##### Edit Title

[Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇨  
Select a dictionary ⇨ ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ●  
⇨ Edit title ⇨ ●

##### View Information

[Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇨  
Select a dictionary ⇨ ⇨ **Dictionary Info**  
⇨ ●

#### Delete Dictionaries

[Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇨  
Select a dictionary ⇨ ⇨

● To Select *Delete This*  
⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*  
⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code  
⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

## Phone Book

### Start Here

[Phone Book Entry] window .....P. 2-20

[Phone Book Entry List] .....P. 2-21

[Entry Details] .....P. 2-21

### Saving Additional Information

#### Save an Address or Memo

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ or   
⇨ ● ⇨ Enter content ⇨ ● (⇨ ⇨  
Select an icon ⇨ ●)

#### Save Location Information

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ ⇨ ●  
⇨ **From Position Loc.** or **From Location History** ⇨ ● (⇨ Select location information  
⇨ ●)

To check location information, select  
**Location Info Detail** and press ●.

To delete location information, select **Delete Location Info** and press ●.

#### Save Birthday

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ ⇨ ●  
⇨ Enter date of birth ⇨ ●

#### Change Entry Number

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ **No** ⇨ ●  
⇨ Change entry number ⇨ ●

### Phone Book Search

#### Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ ⇨ **Change Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Alphabet, Memory No.** or **Group** ⇨ ●



### Change Font Size

[Phone Book Entry List]/[Entry Details] ⇨  
 √☐ ⇨ **Font Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Standard  
 Font, Big Font** (or **Small Font**) ⇨ ●

### Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

[Entry Details] ⇨ Select a phone  
 number/e-mail address ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **Move to  
 Top** ⇨ ●

☞ This procedure is available when more than  
 one phone number/e-mail address is saved to  
 a Phone Book entry.

### Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select an e-mail  
 address ⇨ ● ⇨ **Compose S! Mail**

### Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select a phone  
 number ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **Compose SMS** ⇨ ● ⇨  
 Compose SMS message

## Managing Phone Book

### Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **Ring  
 Tone/Image** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★  
 ⇨ ●

☞ Select another item with ★ to view that  
 setting.

### Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **Ring  
 Tone/Image** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ √☐ ⇨  
**Release Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

☞ When the same ringtone/image is set for  
 multiple entries, canceling the setting for one  
 entry cancels setting for all entries.

### Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ √☐ ⇨  
**Restrictions** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨  
 √☐ ⇨ **Check Settings** ⇨ ●

### Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ √☐ ⇨  
**Restrictions** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨  
 √☐ ⇨ **Release Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

### Check Number of Phone Book Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **No. of  
 Phone Book** ⇨ ●

### Edit a Phone Book Entry

[Entry Details] ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **Edit Phone Book**  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **YES** ⇨  
 ●

☞ Select **No** and edit the entry number. The  
 edited entry is saved as a new entry and the  
 original entry remains as before.

### Copy a Phone Book Entry

[Entry Details] ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **Copy to USIM** or  
**Copy from USIM** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

### Check Location Information

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select location  
 information ⇨ √☐ ⇨ **Read Map** ⇨ ● ⇨ (⇨  
**Send or No Confirmation** ⇨ ●)



#### Send Entries by S! Mail

[Phone Book Entry List] → → **Attach to Mail** → → Compose S! Mail →

Available only in S! Mail.

#### Delete Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] → Select an entry → → **Delete Data** →

- To Select *Delete This*  
→ *Delete This* → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete selected*  
→ *Delete selected* → → Select entries → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*  
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** → → **YES** →

#### Delete Items from an Entry

[Entry Details] → → Select an item → → **Delete Data** → → *Delete Phone No., Delete Mail Add., Delete Address, Delete Loc. Info, Delete Birthday, Delete Memorandums* or *Delete Image* → → **YES** →

#### Delete an Entry from USIM Card

→ **Tools** → → **USIM Operation** → → Enter Security Code → → **Delete** → → **USIM** → → **Phone Book** → → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → → → **YES** →

## S! Addressbook Back-up

### Start Here

[S! Addressbook Back-up] window.... P. 2-26

#### Delete Synchronize Log

[S! Addressbook Back-up] window → **Sync Log** → → Select Log →

- To Select *Delete This*  
→ *Delete This* → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete selected*  
→ *Delete selected* → → Select Log → → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*  
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

# Calling



<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Voice Call</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>	Outgoing Call Functions .....	3-16
Making Voice Calls .....	3-3	International Calls .....	3-16
International Calls .....	3-3	Handling Incoming Calls .....	3-16
Answering Voice Calls .....	3-4	Engaged Call Operations .....	3-17
Recording the Other Party's Voice .....	3-4	Answering Machine .....	3-18
Answering Machine .....	3-4	Call Logs .....	3-18
Playing Messages .....	3-5	Speed Dial .....	3-19
<b>Video Call</b> .....	<b>3-7</b>	Optional Services .....	3-19
Video Call Window .....	3-7		
Making Video Calls .....	3-7		
Answering Video Calls .....	3-8		
<b>Call Logs</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>		
Dialing from Call Logs .....	3-10		
Call Time & Cost .....	3-11		
<b>Speed Dialing</b> .....	<b>3-12</b>		
Speed Dial .....	3-12		
Tomo-Den .....	3-12		
<b>Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)</b> ..	<b>3-13</b>		
Calling Japan and Other Countries .....	3-13		
Calling within the Same Country .....	3-13		
<b>Optional Services</b> .....	<b>3-14</b>		
Overview .....	3-14		

# 3





# Overview

Voice call and video call are available on handset.

### Voice Call

Make Calls to:


- SoftBank Handsets
- Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones
- Landlines

### Video Call

Make Calls to:

- SoftBank Handsets
- Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones
- Landlines

Other party must use a video call compatible phone



#### International Call

### Calling Abroad from Japan

Make/receive voice and video calls.

- International phone service available without separate application.

#### Global Roaming

### Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible. (Prior application may be required.)

- For details, see: [http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global\\_services/global\\_roaming/](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).

## Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with Softbank 3G handsets.

(Emergency Location Report)

940N reports Location Information based on GPS signals. When GPS is unavailable, positioning is calculated based on radio station signals.

- Registration and transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location and signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when:
  - The call is placed without Caller ID (e.g. prefixed by 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
  - Abroad (International Roaming)
- Location Information via GPS is unavailable when:
  - Dial Lock is set (P. 4-3)
  - Positioning is calculated via radio stations.

## Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

- Restrict Dialing (P. 2-23)
- Keypad Lock (P. 4-4)
- Set Max Cost Limit (P. 14-14)
- Emission OFF Mode (P. 4-6)
- PIN1 Code Entry Set (P. 4-2)



## Making Voice Calls

### 1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

#### ■ Correcting Misentries

→ to scroll cursor → to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) → Reenter number(s)

#### ■ Deleting Phone Number

→

### 2



Voice Call Window

### 3 to end call

#### Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when to , or are pressed during a call.

#### Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.

- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters power save mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 14-5). Handset operations are available even in power save mode.
- Connect stereo earphone-microphone to make or take calls with handset closed.

## Operations during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	Press and hold
	or
Hold Call	

## International Calls

Application not required.

1 Enter phone number → → **Int'l Call** →

2 Select a country code → →  
Select an international prefix number →

3 to end call



## Answering Voice Calls

- 1 When a call arrives →
- 2 to end call

## Recording the Other Party's Voice

- 1 Press and hold during a call  
A short beep sounds through the earpiece and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.  
To stop recording, press or press and hold .

## Answering Machine

Record caller's messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice or video calls.

### Setting Answering Machine

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Incoming Call** → → **Answering Machine** →
- 2 **ON** → → **Select an outgoing message** →
- 3 **Enter ring time**

### Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- Answering Machine can be set or canceled by pressing and holding in Standby.
- Answering Machine is unavailable when power is off, in a place with no signal reception, or in Emission OFF Mode. Use Voice Mail instead (see P. 3-14).

## When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded. Handset returns to Standby when recording is complete. Answering Machine notification and Display indicator appear. The indicator shows the number of messages.



- **To Answer Call during Recording**  
→

### Activate When a Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

- 1 **When a call arrives** → or   
Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.



## Note

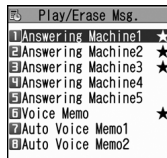
- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.

## Tip

- Alternatively, press **#** when a call arrives. When answering with **#**, handset enters Manner Mode.

## Playing Messages

- 1 **Select notification** or



Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by ★.

- 2 **Select a message**

## Tip

- To delete a message while playing it: **Erase** **YES**

## Operations during Playback

Play Next Message	
Stop	or <b>CLEAR</b>
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

## Tip

- Pressing **CLEAR** in Standby also plays recorded voice messages. When there is a voice memo but no voice message, the voice memo plays.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu: **Tools** **Play/Erase Msg.**

## Operations during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	
Adjust Volume	 or
Pause/Play	
Stop	<b>CLEAR</b>
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

## Tip

- To play video messages from Main Menu: **Tools** **Play/Erase VC Msg.**



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers) **(▶ P. 3-16)**

#### International Calls

- Enter “+” to Call Abroad **(▶ P. 3-16)**

#### Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center **(▶ P. 3-16)**

#### Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Sound Output Between Handset and Bluetooth® Device
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Send Touch Tones **(▶ P. 3-17)**

#### Answering Machine

- Delete Recorded Messages **(▶ P. 3-18)**

### Customize

#### Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image **(▶ P. 14-4)**
- Set Image or Video for Incoming Call

#### Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls **(▶ P. 14-8)**

#### Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key **(▶ P. 14-9)**
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

#### Sounds

- Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message **(▶ P. 14-11)**
- Play Recorded Sound
- Delete Recorded Sound

#### Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting

- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone **(▶ P. 14-11)**

#### Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after “\*” as Sub Address **(▶ P. 14-12)**

#### International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with “+”
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code **(▶ P. 14-13)**

#### Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Automatically Record During Voice Call
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold
- Set Closing Sound Off
- End Call By Closing Handset **(▶ P. 14-13)**

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls
- Set Illumination for Call Start **(▶ P. 14-30)**



## Video Call Window



## Video Call Indicators

<b>MUTE</b> Mute
Call-In-Progress
On Hold
Hyper Clear Voice High
Hyper Clear Voice Low
Transmitting Audio
Transmission Failed
Transmitting Video
Transmission Failed
Sending Camera Image
Substitute Image
Handsfree ON
Handsfree OFF

Visual Check
Photo Mode Portrait
Photo Mode Scenery
Photo Mode Close-up

## Making Video Calls

### 1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

#### ■ Correcting Misentries

→ to scroll cursor → to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) → Reenter number(s)

#### ■ Deleting Phone Number

→

### 2



Video Call Window

### 3 to end call

#### Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when to , or are pressed during a call.

#### Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.
- Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.



## Operations during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	or press and hold or
Hold Call	
Toggle Main and Sub Window Images	Press and hold  to toggle Main window image as follows: Other party's image → Your image → Other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Toggle Rear and Front Camera	
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	
Mute Audio	or press and hold . To cancel mute, press again.

## Answering Video Calls

1 When a video call arrives →

2 to end call

### Tip

- Press when a video call arrives to send substitute image and answer video call.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

[▶ P. 3-16](#)

#### Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls

[▶ P. 3-16](#)

#### Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Sound Output Between Handset and Bluetooth® Device
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Check Own Appearance
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Change Photo Mode
- Backlight Illumination Time

[▶ P. 3-17](#)



## Customize

### Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- Set Image or Video for Incoming Call  
(▶ P. 14-4)

### Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls  
(▶ P. 14-8)

### Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key  
(▶ P. 14-9)

### Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Answer Calls Automatically  
(▶ P. 14-11)

### Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers

- Set Numbers after “\*” as Sub Address  
(▶ P. 14-12)

### Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold
- Set Closing Sound Off
- End Call By Closing Handset  
(▶ P. 14-13)

### Video Calls

- Set Outgoing Image for Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Reverse Front Camera Image
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls  
(▶ P. 14-14)

### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls
- Set Illumination for Call Start  
(▶ P. 14-30)





### Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming and outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

### Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows.

Voice Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed

Answering Machine	
	Voice Messages
	Video Messages
Packet Transmission	
	Packet Transmission
Outgoing & Incoming Calls	
Appears when outside the GMT+09 time zone.	

### Redial/Received Calls

1 or

Redial 1/2	
11/2/ 1 9:45	AkimaMasami
11/28 20:21	KitagawaRikio
11/27 11:56	NakayamaTaro
11/26 21:13	090392****7
11/25 10:32	OzawaEisuke
11/20 19:56	090392****6

Redial Window

Received Calls 1/2	
11/2/ 1 12:58	KitagawaRikio
11/28 22:06	090392****6
11/27 7:12	090392****7
11/18 20:47	090392****8
11/15 14:26	OzawaEisuke
11/11 8:53	AkimaMasami

Received Calls Window

2 Select a record or

Select a Redial or Received Calls record and press to check its details.

### Dialed Calls

1 **Own Data** **Dialed Calls**

Dialed Calls 1/2	
11/2/ 1 9:45	AkimaMasami
11/28 20:21	KitagawaRikio
11/27 11:56	NakayamaTaro
11/26 21:13	090392****7
11/25 10:32	OzawaEisuke
11/20 19:56	090392****6

Dialed Calls Window

2 Select a record or

Select a Dialed Calls record and press to check its details.

### Checking Number of Missed Calls

1 **Own Data**

**Received Calls**

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls appear.

2 **All Calls** or **Missed Calls**



## Missed Calls

Illumination flashes.

Select the “Missed Call” icon to check details or select the icon and press and hold **[CLEAR]** to turn off illumination.

## Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

**Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.**

**1** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Data** ⇒

### Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting restarts from zero seconds.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

[▶ P. 3-18](#)

#### Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

[▶ P. 3-18](#)

### Customize

#### Incoming Call Alerts

- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls

[▶ P. 14-9](#)

#### Checking Call Logs

- Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When Pressed)
- Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

[▶ P. 14-10](#)

#### Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit

[▶ P. 14-14](#)

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Missed Call

[▶ P. 14-30](#)



## Speed Dial

Enter Phone Book entry number (000 to 009) and press for direct access to that entry.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

1 to → or

## Tomo-Den

Save up to 10 Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den for quick access.

- Tomo-Den is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Tomo-Den is available in Secret Mode, however secret entries cannot be saved to Tomo-Den.

## Saving Entries to Tomo-Den

1



Tomo-Den Window

2 → Select a tab →

- ▶ To Search from Phone Book  
**View Phone Book** → → Search Phone Book → Select an entry →
- ▶ To Enter the Information  
**Direct input** → → Enter items →

3 Select a phone number or e-mail address →

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

4

## Using Tomo-Den

1

2 → Select an entry → **CALL, MAIL or VIDEO CALL** →

### Tip

- Alternatively, press - in Step 2 to select a recipient.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den
- Change Tomo-Den Entry Image
- To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries (▶ P. 3-19)



Make calls while overseas.

- Global Roaming Service may require prior application. Details are available online at [http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global\\_services/global\\_roaming/](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).
- 940N is compatible with 3G and GSM networks.

## More Features

### Customize

#### Global Roaming

- Set Operator
- Search Available Operator
- Set Priority for Operators
- Change Network
- Show Operator Name While Roaming

(▶ P. 14-15)

## Calling Japan and Other Countries

### 1 Press and hold

"+" is entered.

### 2 Enter country code and phone number (omit first "0" from area code) ⇨

#### Tip

- Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

## Calling within the Same Country

### 1 Enter phone number with area code ⇨

Do not omit "0" from area code.  
Country code not required.



### Overview

The following services are available with your handset.

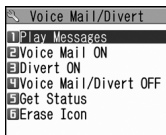
Call Forwarding	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when unable to answer a call. <b>Missed Call Notification</b> Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Group Calling*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Select whether to restrict incoming and outgoing calls and SMS.
Caller ID	Select whether to show or hide your number when making calls.

\* Separate application is required.

### Activating Call Forwarding

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

- ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Voice Mail/Divert** ⇒



Voice Mail/Divert Window

- Divert ON** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls or Video Calls** ⇒ ⇒
    - ▶ **To Enter Phone Number**  
Enter phone number ⇒
    - ▶ **To Search from Phone Book**  
 ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ (twice)
  - No Answer** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Select a ring time** ⇒
- To forward calls immediately, select **Always** and press .

### Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forwarding for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forwarding when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.

### Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

- [Voice Mail/Divert] window** ⇒ ⇒ **Voice Mail ON** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
  - No Answer** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Select a ring time** ⇒
- To forward calls to Voice Mail Center immediately, select **Always** and press .

**Tip**

- If *No Answer* is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If *Always* is set, handset does not ring or vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forwarding for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forwarding has already been set, Call Forwarding is canceled.

**Missed Call Notification**

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.



Follow voice guidance.

**To Play Messages**

- 1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨  
**Play Messages** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

**Canceling Call Forwarding & Voice Mail**

- 1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨  
**Voice Mail/Divert OFF** ⇨ ⇨  
**YES** ⇨

**More Features****Advanced****Call Forwarding & Voice Mail**

- Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages
  - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-19

**Call Waiting**

- Set Call Waiting
  - Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
  - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-19

**Group Calling**

- Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
  - Switch Parties
  - Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
  - Talk with a Specific Party
  - End Call with a Specific Party
- ▶ P. 3-20

**Call Barring**

- Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
  - Cancel Call Barring
  - Change Network Password
  - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-20

**Caller ID**

- Show/Hide Phone Number
  - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-20



### Outgoing Call Functions

#### Show/Hide Caller ID

Enter phone number → → **Notify Caller ID** → ● → **OFF, ON** or **Cancel Prefix** → ● → or

- Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.
- Show/hide Caller ID each time you dial from Phone Book or call logs (Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls).

#### Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

Enter phone number → → **Prefix Numbers** → ● → Select an item → ● → or

- Save area codes and country codes beforehand for quick access to prefixes.
- Add prefix from Phone Book entry, Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls windows.
- 国際発信 (International Dialing Code, 0046010), **184** and **186** are set by default.

### International Calls

#### Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold → Enter country code → Enter area code → Enter phone number → → **Dial** → ●

- "+" appears when you press and hold , indicating that the international code set in **Auto Int'l Call Set.** is entered.

### Handling Incoming Calls

#### Voice & Video Calls

##### Reject Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call Rejection** → ●

##### Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives → → To answer call →   
 Press again to end the call on hold.

### Forward Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call Forwarding** → ●

- This procedure is available when Call Forwarding has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

### Voice Calls

#### Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives → → **Call Forwarding** → ●

- This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.



## Engaged Call Operations

### Start Here

[Voice Call] window ..... P. 3-3

[Video Call] window..... P. 3-7

## Voice & Video Calls

### Handsfree

[Voice Call] window/[Video Call] window  
 ⇨

Press again to cancel handsfree mode.

### Toggle Sound Output Between Handset and Bluetooth® Device

[Voice Call] window/[Video Call] window  
 ⇨ ⇨ **Bluetooth/Phone** ⇨ ●

Alternatively, press and hold during a voice call to toggle device.

### Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)

[Voice Call] window/[Video Call] window  
 ⇨

Press to toggle setting High, Off OFF or Low.

Unavailable when handsfree is On or when an external device (ex. stereo earphone-microphone) is connected.

## Voice Calls

### Send Touch Tones

[Voice Call] window ⇨ (twice) ⇨ **Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Dialing** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Pause Dial** ⇨ ● (three times)

- To send touch tones all at once:  
 ⇨ Press and hold ⇨ **Send at one time** ⇨ ●

Each time you press , a touch tone sequence until "p" (pause) is sent.

Save touch tones in advance (P. 14-12).

## Video Calls

### Check Own Appearance

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **Visual Check** ⇨ ●

appears and substitute image is sent during visual check.

To end visual check:

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **Visual Check Off** ⇨ ●

### Set Image Quality

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **V. Call Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Visual Prefer.** ⇨ ● ⇨

Select an item ⇨ ●

Available when sending camera image.

### Adjust Brightness

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **V. Call Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Brightness** ⇨ ● ⇨

Select a level ⇨ ●

Available when sending camera image.

### Change White Balance

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **V. Call Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **White Balance** ⇨ ● ⇨

Select an item ⇨ ●

Available when sending camera image.





### Change Color Tone

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **V. Call Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Color Mode Set** ⇨ ● ⇨  
 Select an item ⇨ ●

Available when sending camera image.

### Change Photo Mode

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **V. Call Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Photo Mode** ⇨ ● ⇨  
 Select a mode ⇨ ●

Available when sending Rear Camera image.

### Backlight Illumination Time

[Video Call] window ⇨ ⇨ **Display Light** ⇨ ● ⇨ **All Time ON** or **Same as Backlight** ⇨ ●

## Answering Machine

### Start Here

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window  
 .....P. 3-5

### Delete Recorded Messages

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window ⇨  
 Select a message ⇨ ⇨ **Delete This**,  
**Delete Rec. Msg.** or **Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES**  
 ⇨ ●

Selecting **Delete All** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

## Call Logs

### Start Here

[Redial] window .....P. 3-10  
 [Dialed Calls] window .....P. 3-10  
 [Received Calls] window .....P. 3-10

## Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

### Change Font Size

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window  
 or [Received Calls] window ⇨ ⇨ **Font Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Standard Font** or **Big Font**  
 ⇨ ●

### Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

[Received Calls] window ⇨ ⇨ **Ring Time** ⇨ ●

### Delete Records

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window or  
 [Received Calls] window ⇨ ⇨ **Delete**  
 ⇨ ●

- Delete Selected Entry  
 ⇨ **Delete This** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- Select Entries to Delete  
 ⇨ **Delete selected** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select records  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- Delete All Entries  
 ⇨ **Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Selecting **Delete All** in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

## Call Time & Cost

### Reset Total Call Time

⇨ **Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Call Time/Charge**  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ **Reset Total** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter  
 Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ **Reset Total**  
**Duration** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●



### Reset Total Call Cost

MENU → Settings → ● → Call Time/Charge  
 → ● → Reset Total → ● → Enter  
 Security Code → ● → Reset Total Cost →  
 ● → YES → ● → Enter PIN2 → ●

## Speed Dial

### Start Here

[Tomo-Den] window ..... P. 3-12

### Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den

[Tomo-Den] window → ● → Select a tab  
 → [P]

- To Release Selected Entry  
 → Release This → ● → YES → ●
- To Release All Entries  
 → Release All → ● → Enter Security  
 Code → ● → YES → ●

### Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

[Tomo-Den] window → ● → Select a tab  
 → [P] → Image → ● → Select a folder  
 → ● → Select an image → ●

### To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

[Tomo-Den] window → [P] → Broadcast  
 Mail → ● → Create S! Mail → [P]

## Optional Services

### Start Here

[Voice Call] window ..... P. 3-3

[Voice Mail/Divert] window ..... P. 3-14

## Call Forwarding & Voice Mail

### Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

[Voice Mail/Divert] window → Erase Icon  
 → ● → YES → ●

### Check Current Setting Status

[Voice Mail/Divert] window → Get Status  
 → ●

## Call Waiting

### Set Call Waiting

MENU → Settings → ● → Optional Services  
 → ● → Call Waiting → ● → ON or OFF  
 → ● → YES → ●

### Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

[Voice Call] window → Call waiting tone  
 sounds → [P]

[P] Press ● to toggle between two parties.

### Check Current Setting Status

MENU → Settings → ● → Optional Services  
 → ● → Call Waiting → ● → Get Status  
 → ●



### Group Calling

#### Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

[Voice Call] window → → Enter phone number →

To dial from Phone Book, press or , search Phone Book, select a number and then press .

To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, press or , select a phone number or name and then press .

#### Switch Parties

[Voice Call] window →

Press to toggle parties.

#### Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

[Voice Call] window → While talking with one party → → **Join Multi Party** →

#### Talk with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Ans. Call** → → Select a party →

The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.

### End Call with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Disc Call** → → Select a party →

### Call Barring

#### Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Outgoing Calls** or **Incoming Calls** → → Select an item → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when Call Barring is set.

When **Bar All Outgoing Calls** or **Bar All Incoming Calls** is set, Call Forwarding and Voice Mail become unavailable.

When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set, Call Barring is unavailable.

If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).

### Cancel Call Barring

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Cancel All Barring** → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

### Change Network Password

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Set NW Password** → → **YES** → → Enter current Network Password → → Enter new Network Password → → Enter new Network Password again for confirmation →

### Check Current Setting Status

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Get Status** → → Select an item →

### Caller ID

#### Show/Hide Phone Number

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Caller ID Notification** → → **Activate/Deactivate** → → **ON** or **OFF** → → **YES** →



## Check Current Setting Status

☰ → Settings → ● → Optional Services  
→ ● → Caller ID Notification → ● →  
Get Status → ●



# Security



<b>PIN Settings</b> .....	<b>4-2</b>
Setting PIN1 Entry .....	4-2
Changing PIN1/PIN2 .....	4-2
<b>Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use</b> .....	<b>4-3</b>
Dial Lock .....	4-3
Original Lock .....	4-3
Disabling Keypad .....	4-4
Secure Remote Lock .....	4-5
IC Card Authentication .....	4-5
<b>Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls</b> .....	<b>4-6</b>
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID.....	4-6
Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers .....	4-6
Delaying Ringtone .....	4-6
Emission OFF Mode .....	4-6
<b>Secret Modes</b> .....	<b>4-7</b>
Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode .....	4-7
Hiding Handset Data.....	4-7

## 4



## Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Security**  
→ → **PIN Setting** →
- 2 Enter Security Code →
- 3 **PIN1 Code Entry Set** → → **ON**  
→ → Enter PIN1 →

## Changing PIN1/PIN2

● *PIN1 Code Entry Set* must be set to *ON* before changing PIN1.

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Security**  
→ → **PIN Setting** →
- 2 Enter Security Code →
- 3 **Change PIN1 Code** or **Change PIN2 Code** →
- 4 Enter current PIN1/PIN2 →
- 5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2 → →  
Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation →



## Dial Lock

Prevent others from operating handset.

1 → **Settings** → → **Security**  
→ → **Lock** →

2 **Enter Security Code** →

3 **Dial Lock** →

### Note

- GPS positioning features unavailable during Dial Lock. Location Information is based on radio station signals for:
  - Emergency Location Report (P. 3-2)  
Location Information is reported to corresponding agencies (110, 119 or 118) when emergency calls are placed.
  - 紛失ケータイ捜索サービス (Lost Mobile Phone Search)
- Location Navi is unavailable during Dial Lock.

### Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
  - Power on/off
  - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
  - Answering incoming voice/video calls

## Canceling Dial Lock

1 **Enter Security Code** →

If incorrect Security Code is entered, press and enter correct Security Code.

### Tip

- If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset powers off. Turn handset power on and enter correct Security Code.

## Original Lock

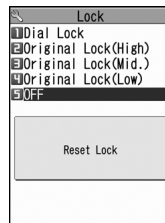
Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc). Select from three levels (high, medium or low) and customize as required.

- For IC Card Lock and Call Remote Lock, see P. 11-3.

## Activating Original Lock

1 → **Settings** → → **Security**  
→ → **Lock** →

2 **Enter Security Code** →



Lock Window

3 **Select an Original Lock level** →

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

### Tip

- To edit title:  
[Lock] window → Select an Original Lock → → **Edit Title** → → Edit title →
- Security Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security Code to unlock and access function/data. Original Lock setting returns when handset returns to Standby.
- *Dial/Sending Mail and Incoming/Mail Disp.* cannot be unlocked temporarily.





# Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

## Customizing Original Lock

Set lock per function, group or category.

Some functions/groups are locked.

All functions in Group/Category are locked.

## Customize by Function/Data

1 [Lock] window  $\Rightarrow$  Select an Original Lock  $\Rightarrow$

2 Select a category  $\Rightarrow$

3 Select a group  $\Rightarrow$

4 Select an item  $\Rightarrow$

Checked items are locked. To uncheck an item, select the item and press .

■ To Select All Functions

$\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select All  $\Rightarrow$

■ To Deselect All Functions

$\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Release All  $\Rightarrow$

5 (three times)

## Customize by Category or Group

1 [Lock] window  $\Rightarrow$  Select an Original Lock  $\Rightarrow$

2 Select a category ( $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a group)

3  $\Rightarrow$  Select  $\Rightarrow$

To deselect, press , select *Release* and then press .

■ To Select Lock for Category or Group

$\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select All  $\Rightarrow$

■ To Cancel Lock for Category or Group

$\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Release All  $\Rightarrow$

4 ( $\Rightarrow$  )

## Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys. Customize Lock settings as required.

## Setting Keypad Lock

1  $\Rightarrow$  Settings  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Security  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Keypad Lock  $\Rightarrow$

2 Enter Security Code  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$

▶ To Lock When Handset Closed After Closed  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  ON  $\Rightarrow$

▶ To Lock After Handset Closed a Certain Time  
Timer  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Select time until lock activates  $\Rightarrow$

3

## Tip

- All keypad operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls and turning power on/off.
- appears at bottom of Display when keypad operation is available in Keypad Lock.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Keypad Lock* is set.

## Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

1 Enter Security Code  $\Rightarrow$



## Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. All key operations are disabled except Power Key. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>), or access My SoftBank from your handset:

☰ ⇒ メニューリスト (Menu List) ⇒ ● ⇒ My SoftBank ⇒ ●

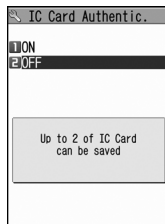
## IC Card Authentication

Hold a FeliCa compatible contactless IC card over handset to authenticate the user ID without canceling Dial Lock or Keypad Lock, or without entering a code number.

- IC Card Authentication is available even when IC Card Lock is activated.
- Register up to two contactless IC cards.

## Activating IC Card Authentication

- 1 ☰ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ● ⇒ **IC Card Authentic.** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ●





IC Card Authentication Window

- 2 **ON** ⇒ ● ⇒ **OK** ⇒ ●

### ■ To Activate Registered IC Card

⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

- 3 Place IC Card over  logo  
 disappears after card is registered.

### Tip

- To deactivate Authentication:  
 [IC Card Authentication] window ⇒ **OFF** ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ ●  
 Select **YES** to delete or **NO** not to delete all registered IC Card data.

## Registering IC Card

- 1 [IC Card Authentication] window ⇒ ☰ ⇒ **New Ext. IC Card** ⇒ ●
- 2 Place IC Card over  logo  
 disappears after card is registered.

### Tip

- To delete IC card registration:  
 [IC Card Authentication] window ⇒ ☰ ⇒ **Del. Ext. IC Card** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select IC Card to delete ⇒ ● ⇒ ☰ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●



## Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

1 → **Settings** → → **Security** → →

2 Enter Security Code →

3 **Unknown, Payphone or User Unset** →

4 **Reject** →

### Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after Step 3: **Accept** → → **Select Ring Tone** or **Select Calling Disp.** → → **Select type** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select a ringtone or image** →

## Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers

1 → **Settings** → → **Security** →

2 Enter Security Code →

3 **Reject** →

### Note

- This procedure is unavailable when **Set Mute Seconds** under **Ring Time (sec.)** is set to **ON** (P. 4-6).

### Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after Step 2: **Accept** →

## Delaying Ringtone

Delay ringtone, for callers not saved in Phone Book (including Secret Phone Book). In addition, set **Missed Calls Display** to **Not Display** so missed calls with a short ring time do not appear in Received Calls. This can prevent you from accidentally returning calls from nuisance calls.

- This procedure is unavailable when **Reject Unknown** is set to **Reject**.

1 → **Settings** → → **Incoming Call** → → **Ring Time (sec.)** →

2 **Set Mute Seconds** → → **ON** → → Enter time before ringtone plays

3 **Missed Calls Display** → → **Missed Calls Display** or **Not Display** →

### Tip

- For calls from numbers in Secret Phone Book, only the number appears when **Set Mute Seconds** is set to **OFF**.
- Ringtone starts in zero seconds when **Set Mute Seconds** is **OFF**.

## Emission OFF Mode

The following are prohibited in Emission OFF Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access

1 → **Settings** → → **Emission OFF Mode** →

Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

### Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.



## Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.

Secret Mode: View all data and secret data.  
Secret Data Only Mode: For Phone Book and Schedule, only secret entries appear. For image files, messages and bookmarks, all saved data appear.

### Activating Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒

### Canceling Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 In Standby,

## Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- Storable file types: Images, videos, received and sent messages and bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser).
- Data saved on memory card or USIM Card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
  - My Picture: Approx. 4 MB
  - Videos: Approx. 10 MB

### Moving Data to Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 From a folder, select an item ⇒ ⇒ **Keep in Secret** ⇒

### Moving Data from Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 In a folder list ⇒ **Secret** ⇒
- 3 Select an item ⇒ ⇒ **Put Out** ⇒
- 4 Select a destination folder ⇒

#### Tip

- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.



# Mail



<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>5-20</b>
Customizing Handset Address .....	5-4	Sending Messages .....	5-20
Setting PC Mail Accounts .....	5-4	Receiving/Opening Messages .....	5-23
<b>Sending Messages</b> .....	<b>5-6</b>	Managing/Using Messages .....	5-25
Sending S! Mail .....	5-6		
Sending SMS Messages .....	5-7		
Sending PC Mail .....	5-7		
Attaching Files .....	5-7		
Saving Addresses to Blog/Mail Member .....	5-8		
<b>Receiving &amp; Opening Messages</b> .....	<b>5-10</b>		
Opening New Messages .....	5-10		
Opening S! Mail & SMS Inbox Messages .....	5-10		
Replying to S! Mail/SMS Messages .....	5-11		
Using Mail List (S! Mail) .....	5-11		
Retrieving New PC Mail .....	5-12		
Opening PC Mail Inbox Messages .....	5-12		
Replying to PC Mail Messages .....	5-12		
<b>Handling Messages</b> .....	<b>5-14</b>		
Message Folders .....	5-14		
Opening Sent & Received Messages .....	5-14		
Sorting Messages .....	5-16		
Using Tomomato-Mail .....	5-16		
Prohibiting Access to Messages .....	5-17		
Saving Attachments .....	5-18		

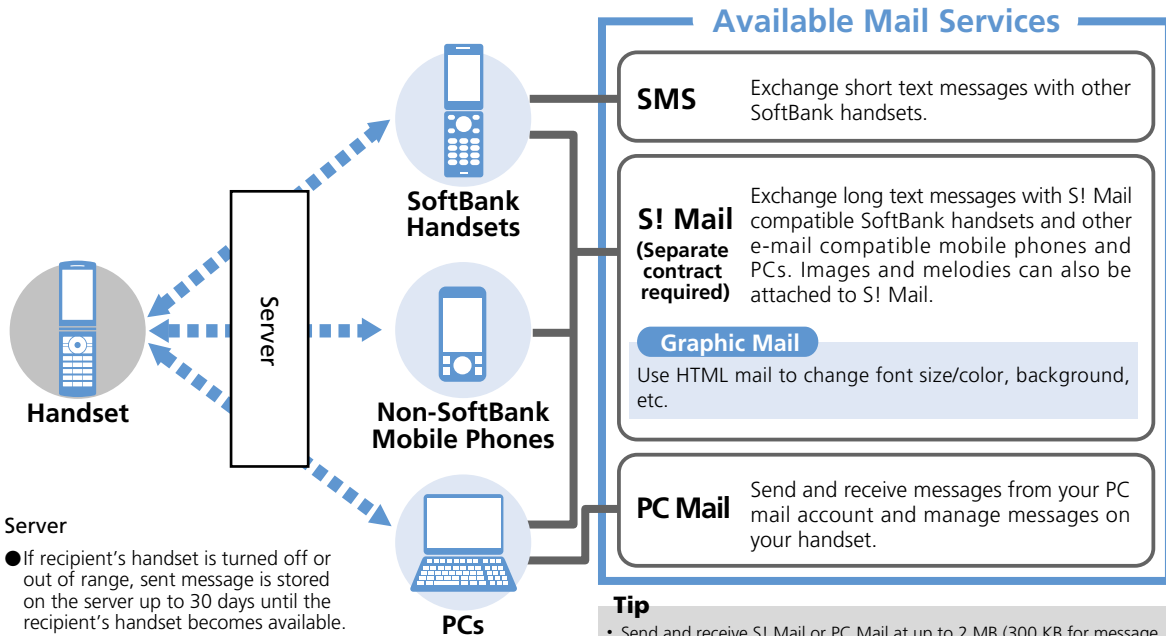
# 5



# Overview

Handset supports SMS, S! Mail and PC Mail.

5  
Mail



### Server

- If recipient's handset is turned off or out of range, sent message is stored on the server up to 30 days until the recipient's handset becomes available.

### Tip

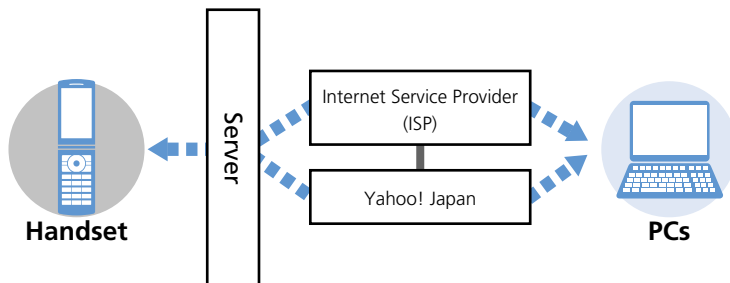
- Send and receive S! Mail or PC Mail at up to 2 MB (300 KB for message text) including attachments. Sending/receiving attachments may require time if file size is large or multiple files are attached. May incur high transmission fees, depending on your subscription.



Send and receive messages for PC e-mail addresses.

## PC Mail

Set your PC Mail account on handset to receive and send messages from your PC Mail or Yahoo! account.



New PC Mail is managed in a separate folder from S! Mail and SMS messages. Press in Mail menu to toggle Mail menu and PC Mail menu. Set the default mail menu in *Priority Mail Menu* (P. 14-19).

## Precautions

- Receiving mail for the first time after account setup may incur high transmission fees. Note also that transmission fees may be incurred for checking messages, even if no new messages are received.
- Setting handset to automatically retrieve mail may incur high transmission fees, especially while abroad.
- Checking for new mail may slow down other functions in use.
- Single-byte katakana may not be supported on receiving device.
- Pictographs in incoming HTML messages appear on handset. However, handset does not support pictographs for outgoing messages.
- Attachments are encoded when sending PC Mail. Since files are larger when encoded, the maximum size when including attachments is smaller than 2 MB.





## Customizing Handset Address

Change handset address (portion before @) to reduce the risk of receiving spam. The default address is random alphanumeric.

- For details, see:  
http://www.softbank.jp  
or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).

1 ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ●

2 **Custom Mail Address** ⇒ ●  
Follow onscreen instructions.

## Setting PC Mail Accounts

Set up to three e-mail accounts. For details on Yahoo! Mail setup, see P. 5-5.

- Check your ISP settings before setup.
- PC Mail service may be unavailable depending on your mail account subscription, settings or specifications. Make sure your PC mail system supports POP retrieval and SMTP transmission.
- Check the following information prior to setup.
  - E-mail address
  - User name (user ID)
  - Password
  - POP server
  - SMTP server

## Send Settings (SMTP Settings)

Check your provider settings before setup.

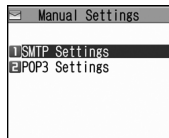
1 ⇒ ⇒ **PC Mail Settings** ⇒ ●

2 **Account Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an account (アカウント1, アカウント2 or アカウント3) ⇒ ●



PC Mail Account Settings Window

3 **Manual Settings** ⇒ ●



Manual Settings Window

4 **SMTP Settings** ⇒ ●

5 **SMTP Server Address** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter address ⇒ ●

6 **Mail Address** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter address ⇒ ●

■ To Set a Port Number  
⇒ **SMTP Server Port** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter server port ⇒ ●  
Setting is "587" by default.

■ To Set POP before SMTP  
⇒ **POP before SMTP** ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●

■ To Set SMTP over SSL  
⇒ **SMTP over SSL** ⇒ ● ⇒ SSL, STARTTLS or OFF ⇒ ●

7 **SMTP Auth.** ⇒ ● ▶

▶ When ON Is Set  
ON ⇒ ● ⇒ **SMTP Auth. User ID** and **SMTP Auth. Password** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ID and password ⇒ ●

▶ When OFF Is Set  
OFF ⇒ ●

8



## Retrieval Settings (POP3 Settings)

Check your provider settings before setting.

- 1 [Manual Settings] window ⇨  
**POP3 Settings** ⇨ ●
- 2 **POP3 Server Address** ⇨ ● ⇨  
Enter address ⇨ ●
- 3 **POP3 Login ID** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter  
address ⇨ ●
- 4 **POP3 Login Password** ⇨ ● ⇨  
Enter password ⇨ ●
  - To Set a Port Number  
⇨ **POP3 Server Port** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter  
server port ⇨ ●  
Setting is "110" by default.
  - To Set Receiving Authentication  
⇨ **APOP Auth.** ⇨ ● ⇨ **ON** or **OFF** ⇨  
●
  - To Set POP3 over SSL  
⇨ **POP3 over SSL** ⇨ ● ⇨ **SSL**,  
**STARTTLS** or **OFF** ⇨ ●
  - To Set to Leave/Delete Messages on  
Server  
⇨ **Delete Server Mail** ⇨ ● ⇨ **ON** or  
**OFF** ⇨ ●

5

## Yahoo! Mail Setup

If you have a Yahoo! Mail account, enter an e-mail address and password to configure the account setting.

- 1 [PC Mail Account Settings]  
window ⇨ **Set Quick Yahoo!**  
**Mail** ⇨ ●
- 2 **Mail Address** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter  
Yahoo! Mail address ⇨ ●
- 3 **Password** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter  
password ⇨ ●
- 4

### Note

- If you edit your account, the following operations become unavailable for some previously received messages:
  - full-text retrieval
  - reply
  - forward
  - re-edit
  - resend

### Tip

- To obtain a Yahoo! Japan ID:  
[PC Mail Account Settings] window ⇨  
**Yahoo! JAPAN ID** ⇨ ●

## More Features

### Customize

PC Mail Account Settings

- Edit Account Name
- Reset PC Mail Account Settings

(▶ P. 14-19)

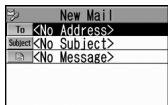
5

Mail



## Sending S! Mail

1 Press and hold



S! Mail Composition Window

2 → ● → **Enter Address** → ●

● → **Enter address** → ●

To add more recipients, Select , press ● and repeat the same step. After adding recipients, press .

3 → ● → **Enter subject** → ●

4 → ● → **Enter text** → ●



S! Mail Text Entry Window

5

■ To Cancel Transmission

→ When *Start Packet Connection* appears → ●

Alternatively, press during transmission.

■ If *Resend mail?* Appears

→ YES → ●

### Tip

• Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

### Graphic Mail

Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

<Example> Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.

1 [S! Mail Text Entry] window →

→ → ● → **Select a font size** → ● → **Enter text** → ●

2 → ● → → **Select a background color** → ●

Press while selecting to toggle between 25-color and 256-color palettes.

3 → ● → **Select a folder** → ●

→ **Select an image** → ●

■ **Inserting Images with Large File Size**

→ *Insert Mail* or *SubQCIF Scale Down* → ● (→ Check an image → ●)

4 → ● → → ● → **Enter**

**text** → ● → → ● → → ●

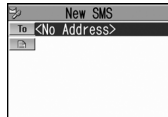
5 → ●



## Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, using recipient's phone number.

- 1 ⇒ **Compose SMS** ⇒



SMS Composition Window

- 2 **To** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Address** ⇒   
 ⇒ **Enter phone number** ⇒
- 3 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter text** ⇒
- 4

## Sending PC Mail

- 1 ⇒ ⇒ **Compose PC Mail** ⇒

### ■ When Several Accounts Are Set

- ⇒ **From** ⇒ ⇒ Select PC Mail account ⇒



PC Mail Composition Window

- 2 **To** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Address** ⇒   
 ⇒ **Enter address** ⇒
- 3 **Subject** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter subject** ⇒
- 4 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter text** ⇒



PC Mail Text Entry Window

- 5

## Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail/PC Mail:

- Images
  - Melodies
  - Documents
  - Books
  - Phone Book entries
  - Schedule (To Do List)
  - Videos
  - PDF files
  - Music (Songs)
  - Widgets
  - Account Details
  - Bookmarks
- For information about image, video, melody, PDF, other document, music files, book and widgets, see P. 12-2.

- 1 **[S! Mail Composition] window/[PC Mail Composition] window** ⇒
- 2 **Select a file type** ⇒ (⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ) ⇒ **Select a file** ⇒

### ■ Images with Large File Size

- ⇒ **Attach Mail, FullHD Scale Down, VGA Scale Down** or **QVGA Scale Down** ⇒   
 (⇒ **YES** ⇒ ) (⇒ **Check an image** ⇒ )

### Note

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.



# Sending Messages

## Tip

- To open or play an attached file:  
Select the file → ●

## Saving Addresses to Blog/Mail Member

Use Blog/Mail Member to group mail addresses together. Create up to 20 groups; save up to 20 addresses per group. Also, save a blog address for easy access when posting blog entries.

**5****Mail**

- **Own Data** → ● → **Blog/Mail Member** → ●



Blog/Mail Member List

- Select a Blog/Mail Member list → ●



Blog/Mail Member Window

### 3 <Not Stored>

- ▶ **To Enter an Address**  
 → Enter address → ●
- ▶ **To Save an Address From Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List (S! Mail & SMS)**  
 → **Look-up address** → ● → **Phone Book, Sent Address or Received Address** → ● → Select an address → ● (→ ●)

## Setting Default Blog Address

Save blog addresses to Blog/Mail Members and set one address as the default upload address. Save blog address beforehand.

- Select item →

★ appears next to the default address.

## Tip

- To cancel default blog address:  
Select item with ★ →

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Composing Messages

- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List (S! Mail & SMS)
- Enter Address from Blog/Mail Member List
- Set To, Cc or Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature
- Enter My Pictograms
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail
- Change S! Mail to PC Mail

▶ P. 5-20

#### Sending Messages

- Change Size of S! Mail to Send
- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Request Delivery Report (S! Mail/SMS)
- Save Messages to Draft
- Quit Composing and Delete Message

▶ P. 5-21

#### Attaching Files

- Capture and Attach Still Image/Video
- Delete Files Attached to S! Mail/PC Mail

▶ P. 5-21



## Blog/Mail Member

- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List
- Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

(▶ P. 5-22)

## Graphic Mail

- Add/Edit Text Decoration
- Undo
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Decoration
- Create Graphic Mail Automatically
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template
- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

(▶ P. 5-22)

## Customize

### Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Message Image

(▶ P. 14-4)

### Header/Signature Settings

- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically

(▶ P. 14-16)

## S! Mail Settings

- Request Delivery Report
- Set Default Mail Size

(▶ P. 14-16)

## SMS Settings

- Request Delivery Report
- Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- Set SMS Input Language

(▶ P. 14-16)

## PC Mail Setting

- Set Default Account

(▶ P. 14-17)

## Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Sending Messages

(▶ P. 14-30)



## Opening New Messages

**Auto Receiving** (P. 14-17) is **Auto(1MB)** by default and S! Mail and SMS messages are received automatically. When receiving messages that exceed 300 KB, packet transmission fees are incurred regardless of your subscription.

### ● Pictograms

	Hurry		Advice
	Like		Cheer
	Dislike		Join
	Happy		Impression
	Angry		Request
	Sad		Notice
	Fun		OK
	Surprise		Reply
	Question		Other

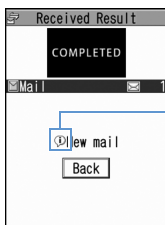
## Tip

- Alternatively open new S! Mail/SMS messages from desktop notification. Desktop notifications are unavailable for PC Mail.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.
- appears if message content does not match any of the above moods or information.

5

## Emotion-Expressing Mail

When a message is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears in Received Result Window and Message List. Set the Keyword setting on, to show Keyword indicators when messages include user-set keywords (P. 14-17).



Indicator/  
Pictogram

Received Result Window

### 1 [Received Result] window ⇨ Mail



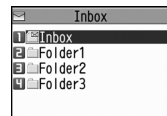
### 2 Select a message ⇨ ●

## Note

- By default, complete S! Mail messages (including attachments) are automatically retrieved. Transmission fees apply, depending on your subscription plan. While traveling abroad, message retrieval may incur high transmission fees.

## Opening S! Mail & SMS Inbox Messages

### 1 ⇨ Inbox ⇨ ●



Folder List



## 2 Select a folder ⇨ ●



Message List

## 3 Select a message ⇨ ●



Message Window

To check previous/next message, press ●.

### Tip

- Some attachments may require content keys to open/play the file.

## Replying to S! Mail/SMS Messages

### 1 [Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ *To Sender* or *To All* ⇨ ●

### 2 Edit subject/text ⇨ ✉

## Replying (Quote Message)

### 1 [Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ *To Sender* or *To All* ⇨ ●

### 2 Edit subject/text ⇨ ✉

### Note

- If *To All* is selected, your address is also included in the reply. Save your address to Account Details (P. 1-21) to exclude your address as a destination.

### Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is unavailable for SMS replies.

## Using Mail List (S! Mail)

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

### 1 ✉ ⇨ **Server Mail** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Mail List** ⇨ ● (⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●)



Mail List

### 2 Select a message ⇨ ✉ ⇨ **Message Receive** ⇨ ● ⇨

▶ **To Receive a Message Receive This** ⇨ ●





# Receiving & Opening Messages

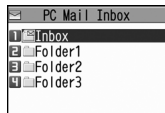
- ▶ To Receive Multiple Messages  
*Receive Selected* → ● → Select messages → ● →
- ▶ To Receive All Messages  
*Receive All* → ●

## Tip

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.

## Opening PC Mail Inbox Messages

- 1 → → *PC Mail Inbox* → ●



PC Mail Folder List

- 2 Select a folder → ●



PC Mail Message List

- 3 Select a message → ●



PC Mail Message Window

To check previous/next message, press .

## Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages.

- When retrieving a large number of messages, some may be unreceivable at the same time.

- 1 →

- 2 *Retrieve New* → ●

- 3 Select an account → ●

## Tip

- Use *Auto Check* (P. 14-18) to set to receive automatically. *Auto Check* is *Manual* by default. When set to *Auto*, expensive packet transmission fees may be incurred.

## Replying to PC Mail Messages

- 1 [PC Mail Folder List] → Select a message → ● →

- When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

→ *To Sender* or *To All* → ●

- 2 Edit subject/text →



## Replying (Quote Message)

**1 [PC Mail Message List]** ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ⇨

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ To Sender or To All ⇨

**2 Edit subject/text** ⇨

### Note

- If *To All* is selected, your address is also included in the reply. Save your address to Account Details (P. 1-21) to exclude your address as a destination.
- When replying to HTML messages, pictograms/decorations are deleted from quoted text.

### Tip

- Files attached to an originally sent PC Mail are deleted from the reply message.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Receiving Messages

- Manually Retrieve Messages (S! Mail) ▶ P. 5-23

#### Checking Messages

- Retrieve Complete S! Mail/PC Mail Manually
- Delete S! Mail from Server

- Read Out Messages
- Check Message Information ▶ P. 5-24

#### Server Message Operations

- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information (S! Mail)
- Forward a Server Messages (S! Mail)
- Delete Server Messages (S! Mail)
- Check Server Memory Status ▶ P. 5-24

### Customize

#### Display Settings

- Set Image or Video for Incoming Message
- Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window ▶ P. 14-4
- Show New S! Mail/SMS Message Info While Viewing TV

#### Incoming Message Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for New Messages
- Set an Incoming Message Image ▶ P. 14-8

#### Incoming Message Settings

- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Show Keyword Indicators
- Delete Keywords
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation ▶ P. 14-17

#### Incoming S! Mail Messages

- Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages
- Set Voice to Read Out Messages
- Set Mail Retrieval Method
- Restrict Incoming S! Mail Size ▶ P. 14-17

#### Incoming PC Mail Messages

- Set New Message Retrieval Method
- Retrieve Notification Only or Full Message
- Set Interval for New Message Retrieval
- Set New Message Retrieval Off During Set Hours
- New Message Retrieval While Abroad ▶ P. 14-18

#### Reply Settings

- Quote Message Marks ▶ P. 14-18

#### Key Illumination

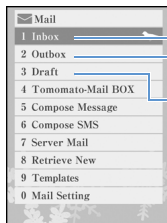
- Set Illumination for Receiving Messages
- Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail
- Set Illumination for New Message ▶ P. 14-30



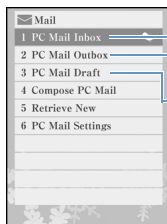
### Message Folders

Press to open Mail Menu.

Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below. Press to toggle Mail menu and PC Mail menu. Set the default mail menu in **Priority Mail Menu** (P. 14-19).



Mail Menu



PC Mail Menu

Received messages

Sent messages

Draft messages

Received messages

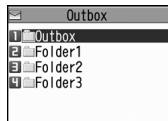
Sent messages

Draft messages

### Opening Sent & Received Messages

<Example> Open a Sent Message (S! Mail)

1 → **Outbox** →



Folder List

2 Select a folder →



Message List

3 Select a message →



Message Window

To check previous/next message, press .

### Tip

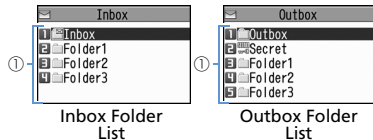
- When Outbox/Inbox is full, the oldest message is deleted for each message sent/received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.



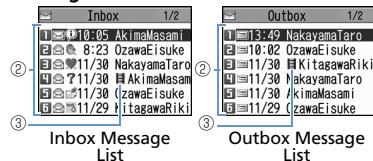
## Windows & Indicators

Check message status, attachment type, etc. by indicators.

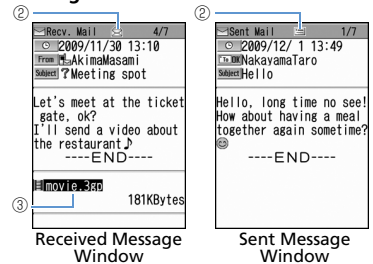
### Folder Lists



### Message Lists



### Message Windows



①	<b>Folder Type</b> General Folder Secret Folder
②	<b>Message Status</b> Unread Read Protected (Unread) Protected (Read) Forwarded Replied Sent to a Single Recipient Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	<b>Message Type</b> SMS on Handset SMS on USIM Card S! Mail/PC Mail Notification <b>Attachment Type</b> Image Video Melody (Tones/Ringtones) Music Copy-protected File Phone Book Entry, Account Details, Schedule Event or Bookmark Widget Book PDF Document Forwarded Server Mail Others Multiple Files

The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

- Folder Contains Unread Messages
- Locked Folder
- Folder with Auto Sort Set
- Protected Message
- Delivery failed to Some Recipients or Some Attachments Deleted
- Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
- Attachment Deleted
- High Priority S! Mail

### Tip

- To open/play copy-protected files, save files to Data Folder.
- appears in **Subject** field when Delivery Report is received.



## Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

1 [Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **Auto-sort** ⇨

▶ To Sort by Address

*Address Sort* ⇨ ⇨ *Look-up Address, Look-up Group, Look-up Member or Enter Address* ⇨

▶ To Sort by Subject

*Subject Sort* ⇨ ⇨ Enter subject ⇨

▶ To Sort by Reply Failed, Send Failed or Unregistered Address  
*Reply Impossible, Sent Impossible or Unregistered Add.* ⇨

### Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send impossible* messages.
- Only one Inbox/Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Unregistered Add.* messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received/Sent Address List (S! Mail & SMS) in *Look-up address*.

## Canceling Auto Sort

1 [Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **Auto-sort** ⇨

2 Select a criterion ⇨ ⇨ **Release** ⇨

▶ To Cancel a Criteria

*Release This* ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨

▶ To Cancel Multiple Criteria

*Release Selected* ⇨ ⇨ Select criteria ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨

▶ To Cancel All Criteria

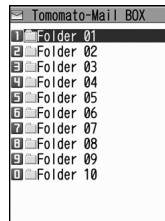
*Release All* ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨

## Using Tomomato-Mail

Store e-mail addresses in Tomomato-Mail and check messages (S! Mail/SMS) with stored addresses by selecting Tomomato-Mail BOX.

## Checking Tomomato-Mail

1 ⇨ **Tomomato-Mail BOX** ⇨



Tomomato-Mail Folder List

2 Select a folder ⇨



## Storing Tomomato-Mail

- [Tomomato-Mail Folder List]** ⇨  
**Select a folder** ⇨ ⇨  
  - To Enter an Address**  
*Enter Address* ⇨ ⇨ Enter Address ⇨
  - To Store E-Mail Address From Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List (S! Mail & SMS)**  
*Phonebook, Sent Address or Received Address* ⇨ ⇨ Select an address ⇨

## Canceling Tomomato-Mail

- [Tomomato-Mail Folder List]** ⇨  
**Select a folder** ⇨ ⇨  
**Unregister** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

## Prohibiting Access to Messages

### Setting Mail Box Lock

- (⇨ ) ⇨ **Mail Setting or PC Mail Settings** ⇨
- Mail Box Lock** ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨
- Select a mail box** ⇨   
Repeat Step 3 to specify other boxes.
- 

### Setting Folder Lock

- [Folder List]** ⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨ ⇨ **Folder Lock** ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨   
Locked folders are indicated by .

### Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box and folder lock.
- Security Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

## Storing Messages in Secret Folders

- Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-7).
- Unread Messages, S! Mail/PC Mail with Text Unreceived or delivery reports cannot be stored in Secret Folders.

- [Message List]** ⇨ **Select a message** ⇨ ⇨ **Keep in Secret** ⇨ ⇨
  - To Store a Message**  
*Keep This* ⇨
  - To Store Multiple Messages**  
*Keep Selected* ⇨ ⇨ Select a message ⇨ (repeat to select another message) ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨
  - To Store All Messages in a Folder**  
*Keep All* ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

## Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

- [Folder List]** ⇨ **Secret** ⇨
- Select a message** ⇨ ⇨ **Put Out** ⇨ ⇨
  - To Return a Message**  
*Put Out This* ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨



# Handling Messages

- ▶ **To Return Multiple Messages**  
**Put Out Selected** → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a message → ● (repeat to select another message) → ☑ → **YES** → ●
- ▶ **To Return All Messages**  
**Put Out All** → ● → Select a folder → ● → **YES** → ●

## Saving an Image Inserted in Text

- 1 [Message] window → → **Save Insert Image** → ●
- 2 Select an image → ● → **YES** → ● → Select a folder → ●
- 3 **YES** or **NO** → ● ( → Select an item → ● ( → Select a view → ● → Check an image → ●))

## Saving a Bookmark

- 1 [Message] window → Select a link (URL, etc.) → ● (twice) → Select a destination → ● → Select a folder → ●

### Note

- Mail-attached phone book entries, schedule events or bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.

5

Mail

## Saving Attachments

Saving Image, Video, Melody, Music, Flash®, Book and PDF Files

<Example> Save an image

- 1 [Message] window → Select a file → → **Save Data** → ● → **YES** → ●
- 2 Select a folder → ●
- 3 **YES** or **NO** → ● ( → Select an item → ● ( → Select a view → ● → Check an image → ●))

## Saving a Phone Book Entry

- 1 [Message] window → Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) → ● (twice) → **Phone** or **USIM** → ● → **New** → ●
- 2 Edit each item →

## Saving a Schedule Event

- 1 [Message] window → Select Schedule events → ● (twice)



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses (S! Mail & SMS)
- Delete All Messages (S! Mail & SMS) in Tomomato-Mail Folder

▶ P. 5-25

#### Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message
- Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book
- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text

- Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member List
- Search Information by Keyword
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Message Font Size
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Return Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open S! Mail Delivery Report
- Check Attachment Properties (Image File)

▶ P. 5-27

### Customize

#### Message Window/Messaging Settings

- Set Default Mail Menu
- Set Message List View
- Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments
- Set Scroll Unit
- Set Font Size
- Check Mail Settings
- Restore to Default Settings

▶ P. 14-19

#### SMS Server Settings

- Change SMS Center Address
- Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address

▶ P. 14-19





## Sending Messages

### Start Here

- [S! Mail Composition] window ..... P. 5-6
- [S! Mail Text Entry] window ..... P. 5-6
- [SMS Composition] window ..... P. 5-7
- [PC Mail Composition] window ..... P. 5-7
- [Blog/Mail Member List] ..... P. 5-8
- [Blog/Mail Member] window ..... P. 5-8

## Composing Messages

### Enter Address from Phone Book

[S! Mail Composition] window, [SMS Composition] window or [PC Mail Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Phonebook** → ● → Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● → Select an e-mail address or phone number → ●

### Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List (S! Mail & SMS)

[S! Mail Composition] window, [SMS Composition] window or [PC Mail Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Sent Address** or **Received Address** → ● → Select an e-mail address/phone number → ● (twice)  
 Alternatively, select **To** and press to open Sent/Received Address List (S! Mail & SMS).

### Enter Address from Blog/Mail Member List

[S! Mail Composition] window/[PC Mail Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Blog/Mail Member** → ● → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → ●  
 All addresses in the selected Blog/Mail Member list are entered in the Address field.  
 You must save addresses to a Blog/Mail Member list in advance.

### Set To, Cc or Bcc

[S! Mail Composition] window/[PC Mail Composition] window → **To** → ● → Select an address → → **Change Rcv. Type** → ● → **To, Cc or Bcc** → ●

- Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail/PC Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.
- Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail/PC Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.
- When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

### Delete an Address

[S! Mail Composition] window/[PC Mail Composition] window → **To** → ● → Select an address → → **Delete Receiver** → ● → **YES** → ●

### Insert Header/Signature

[S! Mail Composition] window/[PC Mail Composition] window → → **Add Header** or **Add Signature** → ●  
 Save header/signature in advance.



### Enter My Pictograms

[S! Mail Text Entry] window → Press and hold → Select a pictograph → →

- Toggle categories by pressing or .
- Available only in S! Mail.

### Delete Text

[S! Mail Composition] window, [SMS Composition] window or [PC Mail Composition] window → → **Erase Message** → → **YES** →

### Change SMS Message to S! Mail

[SMS Composition] window → → **S! Mail Conversion** →

### Change S! Mail to PC Mail

[S! Mail Composition] window → → **PC Mail Conversion** → → **YES** →

- My Pictograms and any Graphic Mail items/settings are deleted.
- Phone numbers are deleted from the Recipient field.

## Sending Messages

### Change Size of S! Mail to Send

[S! Mail Composition] window → → **Compose Size** → → **300KB** or **2MB** →

### Set Priority (S! Mail)

[S! Mail Composition] window → → **Priority** → → **High**, **Normal** or **Low** →

### Server Storage Period (SMS)

[SMS Composition] window → → **SMS Valid. Per.** → → Select a period →

- Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

- When **None** is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

### Request Delivery Report (S! Mail/SMS)

[S! Mail Composition] window/[SMS Composition] window → → **Delivery Report** or **SMS Report Req.** → → **ON** or **OFF** →

- When **ON** is set, handset receives a delivery report.

### Save Messages to Draft

[S! Mail Composition] window, [SMS Composition] window or [PC Mail Composition] window → → **Save** → → **YES** →

- The message is saved to **Draft** or **PC Mail Draft**. Messages saved in **Draft** or **PC Mail Draft** can be edited and sent at a later time.

### Quit Composing and Delete Message

[S! Mail Composition] window, [SMS Composition] window or [PC Mail Composition] window → → **Delete** → → **YES** →

## Attaching Files

### Capture and Attach Still Image/Video

[S! Mail Composition] window/[PC Mail Composition] window → → **Activate Camera** → → **Photo Mode** or **Movie Mode** → → Shoot image/video → ( → **YES** → )



# Advanced Features

## Delete Files Attached to S! Mail/PC Mail

[S! Mail Composition] window/[PC Mail Composition] window → Select an attached file → → **Delete Att. File or Del All Att.Files** → ● → YES → ●

## Blog/Mail Member

### Edit an Address

[Blog/Mail Member] window → Select an address → → Edit address → ●

### Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List

[Blog/Mail Member] window → Select an address →

- To Select *Delete this*  
→ *Delete this* → ● → YES → ●
- To Select *Delete all*  
→ *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code  
→ ● → YES → ●

### Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List] → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → → **Edit Member Name** → ● → Edit name → ●

## Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List] → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → → **Reset Member Name** → ● → YES → ●

## Graphic Mail

### Add/Edit Text Decoration

[S! Mail Text Entry] window → → → ● → Select beginning of characters → ● → Select end of characters → ● → Select effects menu → ● →

#### Apply or Change effects

Available only in S! Mail.  
 Select , press , select YES and then press ● to select the entire text.

### Undo

[S! Mail Text Entry] window → →

Available only in S! Mail.

### Preview Graphic Mail

[S! Mail Text Entry] window → → → ● → or to close preview

Available only in S! Mail.

## Cancel All Decoration

[S! Mail Text Entry] window → → → ● → YES → ● (→ ●)  
 Available only in S! Mail.

## Create Graphic Mail Automatically

[S! Mail Text Entry] window → Enter text → → → ● → to toggle effects → ●

Available only in S! Mail.  
 Emotion of the message is detected from the entered text, and a set of effects that matches the emotion is automatically applied.  
 Press to toggle insert and no insert for pictographs and emoticons.

## Save Graphic Mail as a Template

[S! Mail Text Entry] window → Enter text → ● → → **Template** → ● → Save Template → ● → YES → ●

Available only in S! Mail.  
 Attached files except images inserted in text are not included in a template.  
Save up to 1,000 templates including downloads. Delete saved templates as needed.

**Download Templates**

→ **Templates** → ● → **Download Templates** → ● → **YES** → ● → Follow onscreen instructions

**Create Graphic Mail from a Template**

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a template → ● → → ● →

**Edit a Template**

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a template → ● → → **Edit** → ● → Edit text → ● (twice) → **YES** or **NO** → ●

**Edit Title of a Template**

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a template → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit title → ●

**Delete Templates**

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a template → → **Delete** → ●

- To Select *Delete This*
  - **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete Selected*
  - **Delete Selected** → ● → Select templates → ● → → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete All*
  - **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

**Receiving/Opening Messages****Start Here**

[Message List] .....	P. 5-11
[Message] window.....	P. 5-11
[Mail List] .....	P. 5-11
[PC Mail Message List] .....	P. 5-12

**Receiving Messages****Manually Retrieve Messages (S! Mail)**

→ **Retrieve New** → ● → Received Result window opens → **Mail** → ● → Select a message → ●

Press **Y** or press and hold **CLEAR** to cancel message retrieval.

Retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.



## Checking Messages

### Retrieve Complete S! Mail/PC Mail Manually

[Message List] / [PC Mail Message List] → Select an S! Mail/PC Mail notification →

S! Mail/PC Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the complete message.

Manually retrieve complete messages when *Auto Receiving* is set to *Manual* (S! Mail Settings, P. 14-17).

Manually retrieve complete messages when *Auto Receiving* or *Manual Receiving* is set to *Part* (PC Mail Settings, P. 14-18).

### Delete S! Mail from Server

[Message List] → Select an S! Mail notification → → **Delete** → ( → **Notification, Server Mail or Notifi./Server** → ) → **YES** →

### Read Out Messages

[Message] window → → **Read Out Message** →

Available only in S! Mail/SMS.

Press to stop reading.

Press to end reading.

### Check Message Information

[Message List] / [PC Mail Message List] → Select a message → → **Mail Info** →

## Server Message Operations

### Update Mail List

[Mail List] → → **Mail List** →

### Switch Mail List Views

[Mail List] → → **List Setting** → → **Subject, Name** or **Address** →

### Check Server Message Information (S! Mail)

[Mail List] → Select a message → → **Mail Info** →

### Forward a Server Message (S! Mail)

[Mail List] → Select a message → → **Forward** → → **To** → → Enter address →

### Delete Server Messages (S! Mail)

[Mail List] → Select a message → → **Delete** →

● To Select **Delete This**

→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →

● To Select **Delete Selected**

→ **Delete Selected** → → Select messages → → → **YES** →

● To Select **Delete All**

→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

### Check Server Memory Status

→ **Server Mail** → → **Server Mail Memory** →



## Managing/Using Messages

### Start Here

[Folder List] .....	P. 5-14
[Message List] .....	P. 5-14
[Message] window .....	P. 5-14
[Inbox Folder List] .....	P. 5-15
[Inbox Message List] .....	P. 5-15
[Received Message] window .....	P. 5-15
[Sent Message] window .....	P. 5-15
[Tomomato-Mail Folder List] .....	P. 5-16

## Managing Messages

### Protect a Message

[Message] window ⇨ ⇨ **Protect ON/OFF** ⇨

If a message is protected, this procedure cancels protection.

### Move Messages to a Different Folder

[Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ⇨ **Move** ⇨

⇨ **Move** ⇨

● To Select *Move This*

⇨ *Move This* ⇨ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

● To Select *Move Selected*

⇨ *Move Selected* ⇨ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ⇨ Select messages

⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

● To Select *Move All*

⇨ *Move All* ⇨ ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

A message can also be moved to a different folder from Message window.

### Delete Messages

[Folder List] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete All** ⇨ ⇨

Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

[Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ⇨

**Delete** ⇨

● To Select *Delete This*

⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

● To Select *Delete Selected*

⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ⇨ Select

messages ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

● To Select *Delete All*

⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code

⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

### Delete All Read Messages

[Inbox Folder List] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete Read**

⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

[Inbox Message List] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨

⇨ **Delete Read** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

### Delete All Delivery Reports

[Inbox Message List] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨

⇨ **Delete All Reports** ⇨ ⇨ Enter

Security Code ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

Available only in S! Mail/SMS.

Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.



# Advanced Features

## Delete Attached Files

[Message] window → Select attached files → → **Delete Att. File** or **Del All Att. Files** → → **YES** →

## Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

→ **Tools** → → **USIM Operation** → → Enter Security Code → → **Copy** → → **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** → → **SMS** → → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → → Select a folder → → Select an SMS message → → → **YES** →

## Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

→ **Tools** → → **USIM Operation** → → Enter Security Code → → **Delete** → → **USIM** → → **SMS** → → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → → Select a folder → → Select an SMS message → → → **YES** →

## Change Message Color

[Message List] → Select a message → Press and hold → Each time you press and hold , the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Default (Black)

## Add a Folder

[Folder List] → → **Add Folder** → → Enter folder name → → **YES** or **NO** → (→ **Address Sort, Subject Sort, Reply Impossible, Send Impossible** or **Unregistered Add.** → → Make auto Sort settings → → **YES** or **NO** →

## Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Edit Folder Name** → → Edit folder name → → Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

## Change Order of Folders

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Sort Folder** → → Select a position → → The order of preinstalled folders cannot be changed.

## Delete a Folder

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** → → Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted. → This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder. → Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.

## Check Number of Saved Messages

[Folder List]/[Message List] → → **No. of Messages** → → Check number of total, unread, protected and USIM Card SMS Messages. Folder List: The total of all folders. Message List: The total of the selected folder.

## Check Sent/Received Addresses (S! Mail & SMS)

Press and hold or press and hold → Select an entry →

## Delete All Messages (S! Mail & SMS) in Tomomato-Mail Folder

[Tomomato-Mail Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Del All in Folder** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →



## Using Messages

### Edit a Sent Message

[Sent Message] window → → Edit (account,) address, subject and text →

### Edit & Send a Draft Message

(→ ) → **Draft or PC Mail Draft** → ●  
→ Select a message → ● → Edit (account,) address, subject and text →

### Forward a Message

[Received Message] window → → **Reply/Forward** → ● → **Forward** → ● (twice) → Enter address →

The subject and text can also be edited.

When forwarding an HTML message with PC Mail, decorations are deleted.

### Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book

[Message] window → → **Address List** → ● → Select an e-mail address/phone number → → **Save Address** → ● → **YES** → ●

- To Save to Handset  
→ **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)

- To Save to USIM Card  
→ **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

### Call a Phone Number in Text

[Message] window → Select a phone number → ● → **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** → ● → **Dial** → ●

### Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

[Message] window → Select an e-mail address → ● → Compose S! Mail →

### Access the Internet from a URL in Text

[Message] window → Select a URL → ● → **Yahoo! Keitai** or **PC Site Browser** → ● (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

### Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member List

[Message] window → Select an e-mail address/phone number → → **Save Address** → ● → **Phonebook** or **Blog/Mail Member** → ●

- To Save to Handset  
→ **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)

- To Save to USIM Card  
→ **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

- To Save to Blog/Mail Member List  
→ Select a Blog/Mail Member list → ● → Select an item → ● (→ **YES** → ●)





## Search Information by Keyword

[Message] window → → **Quick Search** → → **Enter Keyword** → → Enter keyword → → or → → Select an item from search results →

## Switch Subject Field Views

[Message List] → Press and hold → When *Mail List Disp.* is set to **2 Lines**, view toggles in the order Name → Address.  
 When *Mail List Disp.* is set to **1 Line**, or to **1 Line+Body**, the view cycles as follows:  
 Subject → Name → Address

## Change Message Font Size

[Message] window → Press and hold

## Search for Messages in a Folder

[Message List] → → **Search Mail** → → **Search Sender**, **Search Receiver** or **Search Subject** → (→ Select a search criterion → ) → Select an address, enter address or subject →

Narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.  
 This procedure can be combined with *Sort* or *Filter*.

## Sort Messages

[Message List] → → **Sort** → → Select a criterion →

This procedure can be combined with the *Search Mail* or *Filter*.

## Filter Messages

[Message List] → → **Filter** → → Select a criterion →

This procedure can be combined with *Search Mail* or *Sort*.

## Return Message List View to Default

[Message List] → → **Display All** →

## Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

[Inbox Message List] → → **Read All** → → **YES** →

## Open S! Mail Delivery Report

[Sent Message] window → → **Disp. Report** →

Only available in Message window of a sent message with a requested delivery report.

## Check Attachment Properties (Image File)

[Message] window → → **Property** → → Select image →

# Internet

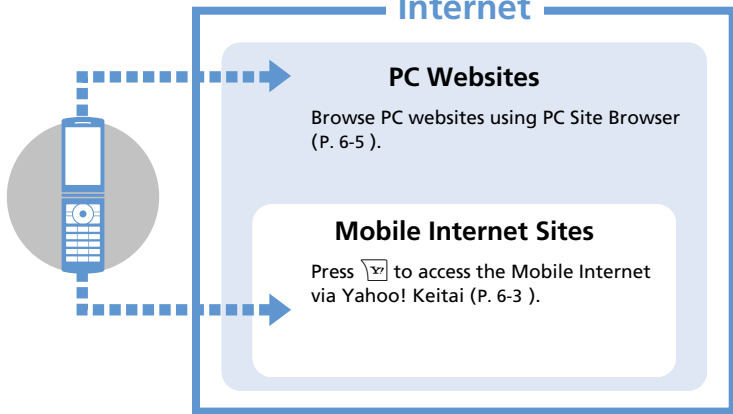


<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>6-2</b>
<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> .....	<b>6-3</b>
Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3
<b>PC Site Browser</b> .....	<b>6-5</b>
PC Site Browser.....	6-5
Connecting to PC Websites.....	6-5
<b>Page Operations</b> .....	<b>6-7</b>
Navigating Pages.....	6-7
Open Linked Page in New Tab .....	6-7
Jumping to Next or Previous Page .....	6-7
Selecting Links and Other Items.....	6-8
Streaming Music and Video.....	6-8
<b>Bookmarks &amp; Saved Pages</b> .....	<b>6-10</b>
Using Bookmarks.....	6-10
Using Saved Pages.....	6-10
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>6-12</b>
Connecting to the Internet.....	6-12
Page Operations.....	6-13
Bookmarks & Saved Pages .....	6-15

# 6



## Internet



6

Internet

### Transmission & Information Fees

Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

### About Security

Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset by default.

- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocols encrypt data before transmission. Connect via SSL/TLS to safely transmit personal information, credit card numbers and internal corporate information, and guard against eavesdropping, data manipulation, impersonation and other Internet risks.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

\* When **Warning Messages** is set to **ON**, an alert appears each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.



## Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1



Web Page

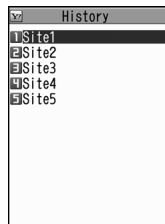
2 Select an item  $\Rightarrow$

Repeat to select more links.

3  $\Rightarrow$  YES  $\Rightarrow$  to close browser

## Using Access History

1 Press and hold  $\Rightarrow$  History  $\Rightarrow$

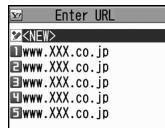


History List

2 Select a record  $\Rightarrow$

## Entering URLs

1 Press and hold  $\Rightarrow$  Enter URL  $\Rightarrow$



URL Entry Window

2 <NEW>  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter URL  $\Rightarrow$    
 $\Rightarrow$  OK  $\Rightarrow$

### Tip

- A confirmation for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Yahoo! Keitai

- Toggle 3G & Wi-Fi Manually
- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(▶ P. 6-12)

#### History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-12)

#### Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by S! Mail
- Delete URL Records

(▶ P. 6-12)

#### Root Certificates

- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(▶ P. 6-13)

### Customize

#### Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet

- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ P. 14-20)



## PC Site Browser

View PC websites using PC Site Browser. Scroll up, down, left or right to view entire page.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



PC Site Browser Window

①	<b>Tabs</b> One for each title/URL appears when viewing several pages.
②	<b>Page Toggle</b> Appears when viewing several pages. Toggle with .
③	<b>Layout Display</b> PC Screen Small Screen
④	<b>New Tab</b> Open link in a new tab.

## About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of

PC Screen and Small Screen:

PC Screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

Small Screen: Scroll pages vertically.

Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

## Connecting to PC Websites

- 1 Press and hold  $\Rightarrow$  **PC Site Browser**  $\Rightarrow$



PC Site Browser Menu

- 2 **Home**  $\Rightarrow$  ( $\Rightarrow$  **YES** or **NO**  $\Rightarrow$  )  
 $\Rightarrow$  **Select an item**  $\Rightarrow$    
Repeat to select more links.



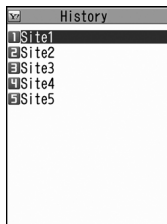
Web Page

- 3  $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$  to close browser



## Using Access History

1 [PC Site Browser Menu] → **History**

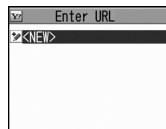


History List

2 Select a record → ● (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ ●)

## Entering URLs

1 [PC Site Browser Menu] → **Enter URL**



URL Entry Window

2 <NEW> → ● → Enter URL → ●  
⇒ OK ⇒ ● (⇒ YES or NO ⇒ ●)

## More Features

### Advanced

#### PC Site Browser

- Toggle 3G & Wi-Fi Manually
- Switch Page View
- Return to Home

▶ P. 6-12)

#### History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

▶ P. 6-12)

#### Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by S1 Mail
- Delete URL Records

▶ P. 6-12)

### Customize

#### Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

▶ P. 14-20)

#### PC Site Browser

- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers

▶ P. 14-21)



## Navigating Pages

### Scrolling Pages

If a page extends beyond view, use to scroll page.

Press or to jump between sections of the page.

### Viewing Frames

When a page includes multiple frames, select frames to view.

1  $\Rightarrow$  Select a frame

2  $\Rightarrow$  **Frame In**  $\Rightarrow$

Navigate through the frame as you would a page.

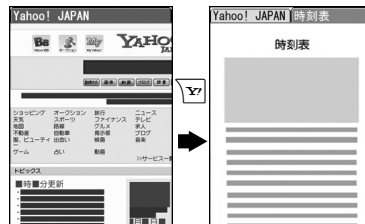
To exit frames, press , select **Frame Out** and then press .

## Open Linked Page in New Tab

Open up to five pages simultaneously. Press to toggle pages.

1 [Web Page]  $\Rightarrow$  Select a link  $\Rightarrow$

The linked page appears in a new tab.



New Tab

Press to toggle tabs.

## Tip

- To open pages in a new tab other than linked pages:  
[Web Page]  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Window Operation  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Open New Window  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Bookmark, Enter URL (, Yahoo! Keitai or Home)  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  Specify page to open  $\Rightarrow$
- To close opened pages:  
[New Tab]  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  YES  $\Rightarrow$
- Use to return to previous pages stored in cache. Return through pages opened in tabs to close.

## Jumping to Next or Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press , select **History Back** or **History Forward** and press to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

- Network connection is made when the cache is full.





## Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.

TOP

-Online Registration-

Terms of Use ①

Name  ②

Area  ③

Gender  Male  Female ④

Pursuit  Sports  Reading  Music ⑤

⑥

①	<b>Link</b> Select a link and press  to access the linked page.
②	<b>Text Box</b> Select a text box and press  to open a text entry window to enter text.
③	<b>Pull-down Menu</b> Select a pull-down menu and press  to open a list of options. Use  to select an item and press .
④	<b>Radio Button</b> Use  and press  to select only one item from a range of options.  indicates the item is selected.
⑤	<b>Checkbox</b> Use  and press  to select multiple items from a range of options. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> indicates the item is selected.
⑥	<b>Command Button</b> Select a command button and press  to activate the assigned function.

## Streaming Music and Video

Play music and videos appearing on a page as you download (streaming).

- Downloaded data is not stored.
- See P. 9-5 for details on using Music Player.
- Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

**1 [Web Page] ⇨ Select music or video ⇨ (⇨ YES or NO ⇨ )**  
Once downloading starts, Music Player activates and play starts.

### Note

- Packet transmission fees are incurred during streaming even if you pause play.
- Note that expensive packet transmission fees may be incurred.



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Page Operations

- Reload Page
- Save Image/Melody Files
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL Links via S! Mail
- Call a Linked Phone Number
- Send S! Mail to a Linked E-mail Address
- Access URL Link
- Save Numbers/Addresses to Phone Book
- Search Information by Keyword
- Change Page Font Size
- Zoom In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page
- Show Key Guidance

(▶ P. 6-13)

### Customize

#### Internet

- Set Scroll Unit/Speed
- Enable/Disable Image Download
- Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments

(▶ P. 14-20)

#### Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off

(▶ P. 14-20)

#### PC Site Browser

- Set Page Layout

(▶ P. 14-21)



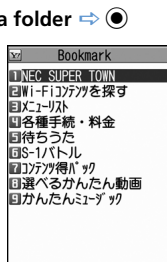
## Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

### Saving URLs to Bookmark

1 [Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ **Bookmark**  
⇨ ⇨ **Add Bookmark** ⇨ ⇨  
**YES** ⇨

2 Select a folder ⇨



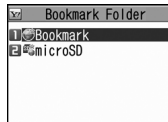
Bookmark List

### Accessing Pages from Bookmark

1 Press and hold

▶ From Yahoo! Keitai  
**Bookmark** ⇨

▶ From PC Site Browser  
**PC Site Browser** ⇨ ⇨ **Bookmark**  
⇨



Bookmark Folder List

2 Select a folder ⇨

3 Select a bookmark ⇨ (⇨ **YES**  
or **NO** ⇨ )

### Tip

- To access a bookmarked page from another page:  
[Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ **Bookmark** ⇨ ⇨  
**Bookmark List** ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨  
 ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨

## Using Saved Pages

Save a page to Saved Pages to view that page at a later time without incurring connection fees.

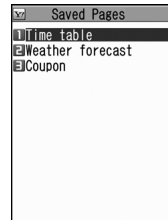
- Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.
- Viewable content is page as it was saved.

### Saving a Page

1 [Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ **Saved Pages**  
⇨ ⇨ **Add Saved Pages** ⇨   
⇨ **YES** ⇨

### Opening Saved Pages

1 Press and hold ⇨ **Saved Pages** ⇨



Saved Pages List



## 2 Select a page ⇌ ●

### Tip

- To open a saved page from another page:  
[Web Page] ⇌ ⇌ Saved Pages ⇌ ●  
⇌ Saved Pages List ⇌ ● ⇌ Select a page  
⇌ ●

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by S! Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

▶ P. 6-15)

#### Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

▶ P. 6-16)



## Connecting to the Internet

### Start Here

- [Web Page] ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-5
- [History List] ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-6
- [URL Entry] window ..... P. 6-3, P. 6-6

## Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

### Toggle 3G & Wi-Fi Manually

[Web Page] → → *Switch to 3G* or *Switch to Wi-Fi* → ●

Packet transmission fees are incurred for 3G access.

For more details about Wi-Fi, see P. 13-11.

## Yahoo! Keitai

### Switch to PC Site Browser

[Web Page] → → *Switch to PC* → ●  
→ *YES* → ● (→ *YES* or *NO* → ●)

### Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] → → *Yahoo! Keitai* → ●

## PC Site Browser

### Switch Page View

[Web Page] → → *Change Disp. Mode* → ●

Page view toggles between PC screen and Small screen. Small screen adjusts width to handset Display.

### Return to Home

[Web Page] → → *Home* → ●

## History

### Save a URL in History to Bookmark

[History List] → Select a record → →  
*Add Bookmark* → ● → *YES* → ● →  
Select a folder → ●

### Check a URL in History

[History List] → Select a record → →  
*URL* → ●

## Delete Records in History

[History List] → Select a record → →  
*Delete* → ●

- To Select *Delete This*  
→ *Delete This* → ● → *YES* → ●
- To Select *Delete Selected*  
→ *Delete Selected* → ● → Select records  
→ ● → → *YES* → ●
- To Select *Delete All*  
→ *Delete All* → ● → Enter Security Code  
→ ● → *YES* → ●

## Using URL Log

### Use Previously Entered URLs

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →  
● → *OK* → ●

### Edit Previously Entered URLs

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →  
● → Select URL entry field → ● → Edit  
URL → ● → *OK* → ●



### Send URLs by S! Mail

[URL Entry] window → Select a record → → **Compose Message** → ● → Enter address, subject and text →

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

### Delete URL Records

[URL Entry] window → Select a record → → **Delete** → ●

- To Select *Delete This*  
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete Selected*  
→ **Delete Selected** → ● → Select records → ● → → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete All*  
→ **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

## Root Certificates

### Check Certificate Details

→ **Settings** → ● → **Connection Settings** → ● → **Certificate** → ● → Select a certificate → ●

### Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

→ **Settings** → ● → **Connection Settings** → ● → **Certificate** → ● → Select a certificate → → **Valid/Invalid** → ●

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

## Page Operations

### Start Here

[Web Page] .....P. 6-3, P. 6-5

### Reload Page

[Web Page] → → **Reload** → ●

### Save Image/Melody Files

[Web Page] → → **Save File** → ● (→ **Object** → ●) (→ Select a file → ●) → **Save** → ● → **YES** → ● (→ Select a folder → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

To play a melody, select *Play* and press ●.

To check file properties, select *Property* and press ●.

### Save Background Image of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Save File** → ● (→ **Background Image** → ●) → **Save** → ● → **YES** → ● (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

To check file properties, select *Property* and press ●.

### Send URL Links via S! Mail

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → ● → **Compose Message** → ● → **Attach URL** → ● → Enter address, subject and text →

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

### Call a Linked Phone Number

[Web Page] → Select a phone number → ● → **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** → ● → **Dial** → ●

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

### Send S! Mail to a Linked E-mail Address

[Web Page] → Select an e-mail address → ● → **Compose S! Mail** →

### Access URL Link

[Web Page] → Select a URL → ●



## Save Numbers/Addresses to Phone Book

[Web Page] → Select a phone number/e-mail address → → **Add to Phone Book** → ● → **YES** → ●

● To Save to Handset  
→ **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)

● To Save to USIM card  
→ **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → ●) (→ **YES** → ●)

## Search Information by Keyword

[Web Page] → → **Quick Search** → ●

● To Enter a Keyword  
→ **Enter Keyword** → ● → Enter keyword → ● → or → ● (→ **YES** → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) → Select an item from search results → ●

● To Select a Keyword from Previous Entries  
→ **History** → ● → Select a keyword → ● → or → ● (→ **YES** → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) → Select an item from search results → ●

## Change Page Font Size

[Web Page] → (→ **Browser Settings** → ●) → **Change Font Size** → ● → Select a font size → ●

Only available when the page view is *Small Screen* in PC Site Browser.

## Zoom In/Out

[Web Page] → → **Zoom** → ● → Select a magnification → ●

Zoom is only available when PC Site Browser is set to *PC Screen*.

## Jump to Top/End of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → ● → **Head of Sentence** or **End of Sentence** → ●

## Change Character Code

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → ● → **Change CHR Code** → ● → Select a character code → ●

Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

## Play Flash® from the Beginning

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → ● → **Replay** → ●

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

## Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → ● → **Site Info** → ● → **Title, URL** or **Certificate** → ●

## Show Key Guidance

[Web Page] → → **Help** → ●

Only available when using PC Site Browser.



## Bookmarks & Saved Pages

### Start Here

[Bookmark Folder List] .....P. 6-10

[Bookmark List] .....P. 6-10

[Saved Pages List] .....P. 6-10

## Bookmarks

### Edit a Title

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit title → ●

### Edit a URL

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Edit URL** → ● → Edit URL → ●

### Send a Bookmark by S! Mail

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Compose Message** or **Attach to Mail** → ● → Enter address, subject and text →

**Compose Message:** URL is inserted in S! Mail Composition window.  
**Attach to Mail:** Bookmark is attached to S! Mail.

### Check Number of Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] / [Bookmark List]

→ → **No. of Bookmarks** → ●

The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List.

### Create a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] → → **Add Folder** → ● → Enter folder name → ●

### Edit a Folder Name

[Bookmark Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Edit Folder Name** → ● → Edit folder name → ●

### Change Order of Folders

[Bookmark Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Sort Folder** → ● → Select a position → ●

The order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

### Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Move** → ●

● To Select **Move This** → **Move This** → ● → Select a destination folder → ● → **YES** → ●

● To Select **Move Selected** → **Move Selected** → ● → Select a destination folder → ● → Select bookmarks → ● → → **YES** → ●

● To Select **Move All** → **Move All** → ● → Select a destination folder → ● → **YES** → ●

### Delete a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

This procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder.





## Delete Bookmarks

[Bookmark List] ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨

⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete This*

⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete Selected*

⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select

bookmarks ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*

⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code

⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

Alternatively, to delete all bookmarks:

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete**

*All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨

YES ⇨ ●

## Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ ⇨ **No. of Pages**

⇨ ●

## Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page

⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete This*

⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete Selected*

⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select saved

pages ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*

⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code

⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.

## Saved Pages

### Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page

⇨ ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit title ⇨

●

### Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page

⇨ ⇨ **Protect ON/OFF** ⇨ ●

Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

# Camera



<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>
Viewfinder Indicators.....	7-3
Switching Cameras.....	7-5
<b>Capturing Still Images</b> .....	<b>7-6</b>
Capturing Still Images.....	7-6
<b>Recording Videos</b> .....	<b>7-8</b>
Recording Videos .....	7-8
<b>Various Features</b> .....	<b>7-10</b>
Using Smile Mode .....	7-10
Continuous Shooting .....	7-10
Add Frames to Images .....	7-11
Auto Timer.....	7-11
Panoramic Shooting.....	7-11
Recording Slow-Motion Video (Speed Movie).....	7-12
Chance Capture .....	7-12
Recording Only Sound .....	7-13
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>7-14</b>
During Shooting.....	7-14
After Shooting.....	7-14

# 7



Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

## Capture Still Images/Videos

### Wide Range of Image Sizes

Select image size accordingly. Use small sizes for S! Mail/PC Mail attachments and larger sizes for saving high resolution images.

### Photo Modes

Select a mode suited to the subject/scene such as Portrait, Scenery and Sports mode.

### Various Features

Features include:  
Auto Timer  
Continuous Shooting  
Adding Frames  
(P. 7-10, P. 7-11)

### Smile Mode

Shutter automatically releases when Camera detects a smile (P. 7-10).

Send by S! Mail/PC Mail



Non-SoftBank  
Mobile Phones



SoftBank  
Handsets



PCs

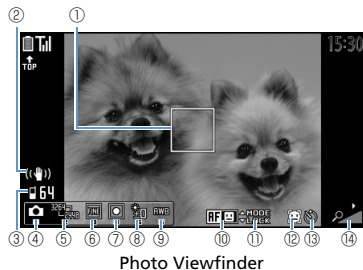
- Lens' focus sound may be audible when using Rear Camera. This is normal.
- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Handset movement during shooting may cause image blurring when Shake Correction is **OFF**. Setting Shake Correction to **Auto** is recommended.
- Although Camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.

When **Auto-change Screen** is set to **ON**, turn handset on its left side while using Camera for Landscape View.

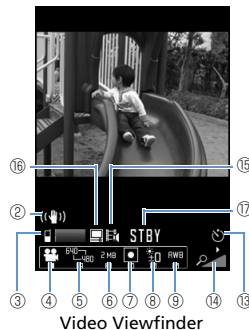
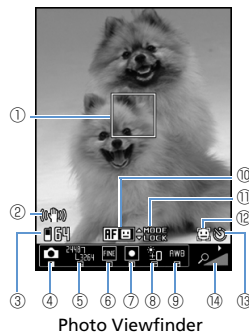


## Viewfinder Indicators

### Landscage View



### Portrait View



①	<b>Focus Frame (Still Images)</b> A white frame appears for Auto Focus. Focus Frame is green when focus is locked, and red if focusing failed.
②	<b>Shake Correction</b> Auto
③	<b>Storage Location (Still Image)</b> Handset      Memory Card <b>Storage Capacity (Still Image)<sup>1</sup></b> White number: 11 or more files Yellow number: 10 or less files Red number: No memory space
	<b>Storage Location (Video)</b> Handset      Memory Card <b>Storage Capacity (Video)<sup>1</sup></b> Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
④	<b>Camera Mode</b> Movie Mode Speed Movie Chance Capture Photo Mode Auto Continuous Shooting Manual Continuous Shooting Voice Mode Panorama Cap. Mode



# Overview

⑤	<b>Image Size</b> · Photo Mode/Continuous Shooting 8M (2448 × 3264) to  QCIF (176 × 144) · Panorama Cap. Mode Panorama (4096 × 480 : Vertical) Panorama (2738 × 480 : Horizontal) · Movie Mode/Speed Movie <sup>2</sup> /Chance Capture VGA (640 × 480) to  QCIF (176 × 144)
⑥	<b>Image Quality (Still Image)</b> Super Fine       Normal Fine <b>File Size (Video)</b> Mail attachment <sup>3</sup> Long time Up to 2 MB
⑦	<b>Photo Mode</b> Auto       Sports Mode Portrait       Night Mode Smile       Pet Scenery       Food Backlight       OFF
⑧	<b>Brightness</b> -2 to  +2
⑨	<b>White Balance<sup>4</sup></b> Auto       Light bulb Fine       Fluorescent lamp Cloudy

⑩	<b>AF Mode (Still Image)</b> Face ON (Face detection + AF ON) AF ON Close-up AF OFF
⑪	<b>AF Guidance (Still Images)</b> For AF toggle and focus lock
⑫	<b>Face Select Mode (Still Image)</b> Face selecting mode
⑬	<b>Auto Timer</b> Auto Timer set
⑭	<b>Zoom (16 steps)</b> Minimum to  Maximum
⑮	<b>Recording Type (Video)</b> Normal (Video & Sound) Video only       Sound only
⑯	<b>Image Quality (Video)</b> Long time       Fine Normal       Super Fine
⑰	<b>Recording Status (Video)</b> Recording ready Recording

- 1 Approximate value
- 2 Switches to **QVGA (320×240)** in **Speed Movie**.
- 3 Available when **Select Size** is **QCIF (176×144)**.
- 4 Available only when **Photo Mode** is set to **OFF** (in normal and continuous shooting modes).

## Auto Save

Captured still images and videos are automatically saved to handset.

### Tip

- To set so that a preview window appears after recording:  
 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ **Auto Save Set** ⇨ ⇨ **OFF** ⇨

## Shake Correction

Camera is equipped with Shake Correction. This function reduces camera shake in 6 axial directions for still images and 4 axial directions for videos taken with the rear camera.

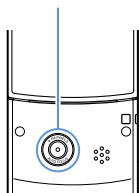
Set Shake Correction off when not needed.



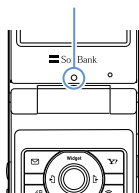
## Switching Cameras

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ **Front Camera** or **Rear Camera** ⇨

Rear Camera



Front Camera



### Rear Camera

Use for people, animals and scenery. Image appearing on Display appear as seen.

### Front Camera

Use to photograph yourself. Image appearing on Display is in mirror display, but the saved image is displayed normally.



## Capturing Still Images

- 1 ⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **Photo Mode** ⇒

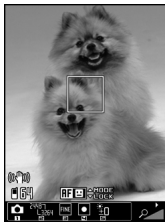


Photo Viewfinder

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒   
 When the focus locks, Focus Frame turns green and shutter is released.   
 Image is automatically saved.

### Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold to activate Camera in Photo Mode.

## Photo Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press to save image.



Photo Preview Window

### ■ To Discard Image and Return to Viewfinder

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### Tip

- Attach still images to S! Mail or set as wallpaper (P. 7-14, P. 7-15).
- Still images are saved to My Picture in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 14-24).
- Shutter clicks even if focusing fails and Focus Frame turns red.

## Operations in Viewfinder

AF Change	
AF Lock	
Face Select Mode <sup>1</sup>	Press and hold • Press  or  and move Focus Frame to the subject. Press and hold  again.
Zoom In	
Zoom Out	
Open Menu	
Toggle Camera Mode	
Select Size	
Quality Setting	
Photo Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
White Balance <sup>2</sup>	
Toggle Viewfinders <sup>3</sup>	
Help	

1 Available when AF is set to *Face ON*.

2 Available when *Photo Mode* is set to *OFF*.

3 Available when *Auto-change Screen* is set to *OFF*.



## More Features

### Advanced

#### During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Set Shake Correction

(▶ P. 7-14)

#### After Shooting

- Zoom In/Out
- Upload Still Image to Blog
- Send Still Image with Graphic Mail
- Send Still Image by S! Mail
- Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Show Shot Still Image in Standby

(▶ P. 7-14)

### Customize

#### Camera Settings

- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Landscape View Shooting

(▶ P. 14-24)

#### File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Still Images

(▶ P. 14-24)





## Recording Videos

- 1 ⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **Movie Mode** ⇒



Video Viewfinder

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒ Recording starts.
- 3 Recording ends. Video is automatically saved.

## Video Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press to save video.



Video Preview Window

- **To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder**  
⇒ **CLEAR** ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### Tip

- Video is saved to *Videos* in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 14-24).

## Operations in Video Viewfinder

Zoom In	
Zoom Out	
Open Menu	
Toggle Camera Mode	[1]
Select Size	[2]
File Size Setting	[3]
Photo Mode	[4]
Adjust Brightness	[5]
White Balance	[6]
Toggle Viewfinders*	[9]
Help	[0]

\* Available when *Auto-change Screen* is set to *OFF*.

### Tip

- Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.



## More Features

### Advanced

#### During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Set Image Quality
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Video Type
- Set Shake Correction

 **P. 7-14**

#### After Shooting


- Upload Video to Blog
- Send Video by S! Mail
- Show Recorded Video in Standby
- Edit Title of Video

 **P. 7-14**

### Customize


#### Video Settings

- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Landscape View Shooting

 **P. 14-24**

#### File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Videos

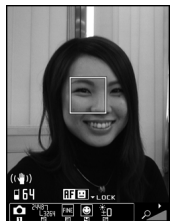
 **P. 14-24**



## Using Smile Mode

Camera automatically detects a smile and automatically releases the shutter.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] → 4 → →



Smile Mode Viewfinder

- 2 Frame image in Viewfinder →

When the person in Focus Frame smiles, the shutter is automatically released. flashes while the smile is being detected. Image is automatically saved.

## Continuous Shooting

Shoot up to 20 still images continuously.

Automatic continuous shooting mode:

Automatically shoots a set number of images at set intervals after you release the shutter.

Manual continuous shooting mode:

Shoots a set number of images, each of which is shot by releasing the shutter manually.

- See P. 14-24 for details on setting interval/number of shots for Continuous Shooting.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → 1 → or →



Continuous Shooting Viewfinder (Manual)

- 2 Frame image in Viewfinder →
- Image is automatically saved.

## Thumbnail Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*.

Press and hold , *Save* or *Mirror Save* and press to save all still images.



Thumbnail Preview Window

- To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

→ → YES →

### Tip

- Image size can only be set to WQVGA, QVGA V. (.QVGA) or QCIF.



## Add Frames to Images

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] → → **Select Frame** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select a frame** →
  - 2 **Compose image in the frame** →
- Image is automatically saved.

### Framed Image Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press to save image.



Framed Image Preview Window

- **To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder**  
 → → **YES** →

## Auto Timer

- Auto Timer returns to *OFF* after shooting.
- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → **Auto Timer** →
  - 2 **ON** → → **Enter time** →
  - 3 **Frame image in Viewfinder** → →
- Auto Timer starts countdown, and Illumination flashes blue. About five seconds before shooting, a countdown tone sounds and Illumination flashes rapidly.
- To stop Auto Timer, press or .
- ▶ **For Still Images**  
 Images are automatically saved.
  - ▶ **For Videos**  
  
 Recording ends. Videos are automatically saved.

### Tip

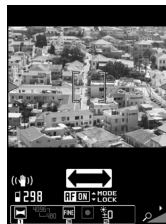
- To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press .

## Panoramic Shooting

Create a single panorama shot by moving handset horizontally while shooting.

- Up and down handset movements may cause blurred images.
- Subject image may blur depending on the subject or if the subject is moving.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → →

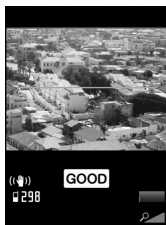


Panorama Cap. Window



## Various Features

- 2** Display one end of subject ⇨ ●  
Panorama shooting starts.



Panorama Shooting

- 3** ●  
Pan horizontally (left or right) using green line as a guide. Maintain even speed, making sure **GOOD** appears. If **FAST** appears, image may not be captured properly.
- 3** ●  
Panorama shooting ends.  
Image is automatically saved.  
Shooting automatically ends if the maximum storable capacity is reached.

## Recording Slow-Motion Video (Speed Movie)

Use Speed Movie to record video in slow-motion.

- Available in Landscape View.

- 1** [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ [1] ⇨ [Speed] ⇨ ●
- 2** Frame image in Viewfinder ⇨ ●  
Recording starts.
- 3** ●  
Recording ends.  
Video is automatically saved.

### Tip

- Sound is not recorded.
- Zoom is unavailable.
- Available only for Rear Camera.

## Chance Capture

Continue recording video even when memory is full.

- 1** [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ [1] ⇨ [Memory] ⇨ ●
- 2** Frame image in Viewfinder ⇨ ●  
Recording starts.  
When the available recording time is over, the remaining time indication flashes.
- 3** ●  
Recording ends.  
Video is automatically saved.

### Note

- When recorded video exceeds available memory, handset saves the maximum recordable time from the end of recording. Initial portion is deleted.



## Recording Only Sound

Record only audio in Movie Mode (Voice Mode).

**1** [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ ⇨

**2** Recording starts.

**3** Recording ends.  
Video is automatically saved.

### Tip

- To activate Voice Mode from Main Menu:

⇨ Camera ⇨ ⇨ Voice Mode ⇨

## More Features

### Advanced

#### After Shooting

- View Images
- Save One Frame
- Save Only Selected Images
- Save as Animation
- Open an Image as Mirror Image
- Attach to S! Mail
- Change Frame before Saving Image

[▶ P. 7-15](#)

### Customize

#### Camera Settings

- Set Level of Smile for Smile Mode
- Set Interval for Continuous Shooting
- Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting

[▶ P. 14-24](#)

#### File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Still Images/Videos

[▶ P. 14-24](#)



## During Shooting

### Start Here

[Photo Viewfinder] ..... P. 7-6

[Video Viewfinder] ..... P. 7-8

### Use Camera Menu

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨  
⇨ Select an item ⇨ ●

### Set Image Quality

[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ **Quality Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ●

### Switch Color Modes

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨  
⇨ ⇨ **Camera Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Effect** ⇨  
● ⇨ **Full Color, Sepia** or **Monochrome** ⇨  
●

### Reduce Flicker

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨  
⇨ ⇨ **Camera Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Flicker** ⇨  
● ⇨ **Auto, Mode 1(50Hz)** or **Mode 2(60Hz)** ⇨  
●

### Check Storage Capacity

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨  
⇨ ⇨ **Memory Info** ⇨ ●

### Change Video Type

[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **Movie Type Set** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Normal, Video** or **Voice** ⇨ ●

### Set Shake Correction

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨  
⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **Shake Correction** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Auto** or **OFF** ⇨ ●

## After Shooting

### Start Here

[Photo Preview] window.....P. 7-6

[Video Preview] window.....P. 7-8

[Thumbnail Preview] window.....P. 7-10

[Framed Image Preview] window.....P. 7-11

### Zoom In/Out

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ or  
⇨ to zoom in or out.  
⇨ Press ⇨ to return to original size.

### Upload Still Image/Video to Blog

[Photo Preview] window/[Video Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **Blog Cont.** or **Blog Contribution** ⇨ ● (⇨ **Attach Mail, FullHD Scale Down, VGA Scale Down** or **QVGA Scale Down** ⇨ ●) ⇨ Enter information ⇨



⇨ Save your blog e-mail address to Blog/Mail Member beforehand (P. 5-8).

⇨ Video files exceeding the size limit are not uploaded to a blog.

### Send Still Image with Graphic Mail

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **Insert Image** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Insert Mail or SubQCIF Scale Down** ⇨ ● ⇨ Create Graphic Mail ⇨ ⇨

### Send Still Image/Video by S! Mail

[Photo Preview] window/[Video Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **Attach Image** or **Compose Message** ⇨ ● (⇨ **Attach Mail, FullHD Scale Down, VGA Scale Down** or **QVGA Scale Down** ⇨ ●) ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨ ⇨

⇨ Video files exceeding the size limit are not attached.



### Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Mirror Display** ⇨ ●

### Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Mirror Save** ⇨ ●

### Show Shot Still Image in Standby

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Set as Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Stand-by Display** ⇨ ●  
⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ● ⇨ Check preview ⇨ ●

### Show Recorded Video in Standby

[Video Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Set as Stand-by** ⇨ ●

### Edit Title of Video

[Video Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ●

### View Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ⇨ Press to switch to the previous/next image.

### Save One Frame

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **Save** or **Mirror Save** ⇨ ●

### Save Only Selected Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ● ⇨ Repeat the same step ⇨ ⇨ **Save** or **Mirror Save** ⇨ ●  
 Select a checked image and press ● to cancel the selection.

### Save as Animation

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Store All&Anime** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Save** or **Mirror Save** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination ⇨ ●

### Open an Image as Mirror Image

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Mirror Display** ⇨ ●

### Attach to S! Mail

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ (twice) ⇨ **Attach Image** ⇨ ●  
(⇨ **Attach Mail** or **QVGA Scale Down** ⇨ ●) ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨

### Change Frame before Saving Image

[Framed Image Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Change Frame** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a frame ⇨ ● (twice)







<b>About TV</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
Initial Setup .....	8-3
TV Windows.....	8-4
<b>Watching TV</b> .....	<b>8-6</b>
Time Shift Playback While Watching .....	8-7
Data Broadcasts (Japanese) .....	8-7
Program Guide .....	8-8
<b>Recording/Playing Programs</b> .....	<b>8-9</b>
Recording Programs.....	8-9
Playing Recorded Programs.....	8-9
<b>View/Record Timer</b> .....	<b>8-11</b>
Setting View Timer.....	8-11
Setting Record Timer .....	8-11
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>8-13</b>
Channel Settings .....	8-13
Watching TV .....	8-13
Data Broadcasts.....	8-13
TV Link .....	8-14
Recording Programs.....	8-14
Playing Programs.....	8-15
View/Record Timer .....	8-15



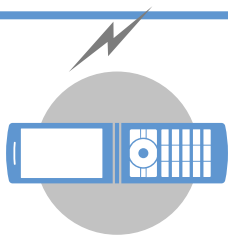
# About TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones.

- One Seg is available only in Japan.

## One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band for TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.



Watch TV in  
Widescreen

### Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-7).

### Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-9).

### View and Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-11).

### Quick Info

Sender and subject information appears for new S! Mail/SMS message while TV is active (P. 14-5).

## Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- TV is available when USIM Card is inserted and with a valid SoftBank contract.
- TV antenna is built into handset. If image quality does not improve, move handset away from body or change locations.

When *Auto-change Screen* is set to *ON*, turn handset on its left or right side while watching TV for Landscape View. However, view does not change when *TV Power Saving* is set.



- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
  - Areas far from signal towers
  - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
  - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:  
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting  
From PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>  
From handset: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>  
(Japanese)

### When You First Activate TV

The first time you activate TV, the following information appears.

- How to switch between Portrait and Landscape View
  - Functions unavailable in Landscape View
- Read information then press **●**, select **YES**, and press **●**. If **NO** is selected, information no longer appears when activating TV.

### Operating in Landscape View

Multi Selector for selecting channels or adjusting the volume is operated the same way in both Portrait and Landscape View.

### Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

- 1 ⇒ **TV** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Channel Settings** ⇒ **●**
- 2 **Select Area** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Select area** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Select prefecture/city** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **●**

Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

### Tip

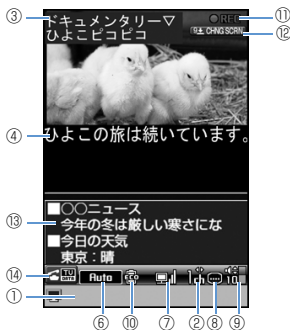
- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the *Automatic* option.



## TV Windows



Landscape View



Portrait View

①	<b>Quick Info</b> Ticker scrolls across top of Display for new S! Mail/SMS messages (P. 14-5).
②	<b>Channel</b>
③	<b>Program Title</b>
④	<b>Subtitles</b>
⑤	<b>Sound Effect on (always on)</b>
⑥	<b>Sound Effect</b> <b>OFF</b> OFF <b>CS5.1ch</b> CS5.1ch <b>Auto</b> Auto <b>Live Concert Drama Sports</b> <b>News Variety Movie</b> Modes by Program Type <b>Manner</b> Sound Leak Minimized
⑦	<b>Signal Strength</b> Strong Moderate Weak Out of Broadcasting Area
⑧	<b>Subtitle Data</b> Subtitles Available
⑨	<b>Volume</b>
⑩	<b>TV Power Saving</b> TV Power Saving Active

⑪	<b>Recording Status</b> Recording Timer Recording Activated (Red) Recording Paused <b>Time Shift Status</b> (Green) Pause Normal Speed 1.3x Speed 2x Speed
⑫	<b>EPG</b> Program guide
⑬	<b>Data Broadcast</b>
⑭	<b>TV View Mode</b> Image Mode Data Broadcast Mode



## More Features

### Advanced

#### Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

[▶ P. 8-13](#)

### Customize

#### Channel List

- Change Title of Channel List
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

[▶ P. 14-22](#)

#### Other Settings

- Check TV Settings
- Reset Channel Settings
- Clear Data Broadcast Memory
- Reset TV Settings

[▶ P. 14-23](#)



# Watching TV

- 1 → **TV** → → **Watch TV** →



TV Window

## 2 Use Keypad to select a channel

Press for channel 10, for channel 11, and for channel 12.

## 3 or press and hold to end TV → **YES** →

Follow the same step to end TV in Portrait view.

### Tip

- TV volume is "0" when Manner Mode is active and no earphone is connected. Adjust with .
- Play TV audio from any Bluetooth® compatible audio device (P. 13-5).

## TV Operations

Pause or Continue <sup>1</sup>	
Change Channel in Order	
Automatically Search for Receivable Channels	Press and hold • Press  or  to stop search
Adjust Volume	or press and hold
	or Press and hold  or press and hold
Mute	
Toggle Portrait and Landscape <sup>2</sup>	Press and hold
Show/Hide Subtitles <sup>3</sup>	Press and hold
Toggle Windows <sup>4</sup>	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

Switch to Data Broadcast Mode<sup>4</sup>



- 1 TV viewing resumes in Time Shift playback.
- 2 Available when **Auto-change Screen** is set to **OFF**.
- 3 Available in Landscape View.
- 4 Available in Portrait View.

## Taking Calls While Watching TV

When a call arrives or when Alarm or Schedule Alarm is activated while watching TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after call or function ends.



## Time Shift Playback While Watching

Resume watching TV even after pausing with playback.

- Time Shift playback is available when TV is paused or you receive a call.
- Time Shift playback is unavailable when *Time Shift Setup* is set to *Auto OFF*.

### 1 [TV] window ⇨ ●

TV is paused.

### 2 ●

Time Shift playback starts.

### Note

- Handset stores up to two minutes of recording. Data is overwritten starting from the oldest data. If you resume viewing after pausing for more than two minutes, viewing starts from the beginning of stored data (not from where you paused).

### Tip

- Other channels are unavailable while TV is paused or during Time Shift playback.

## Playback Operations

Start from Beginning of Stored Playback Data	<input type="radio"/>
Change Playback Speed	<input type="radio"/>
End Playback	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

## Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

### 1 [TV] window ⇨



Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated.

### 2 Select a link ⇨ ●

If a confirmation for Internet access appears, select **YES** and press ● to access the Internet. Select **YES (By default)** and confirmation no longer appears.

## TV Link Operations

Select a Link	<input type="radio"/>
Confirm Selection of a Link	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Switch Pages	<input type="radio"/>
Previous Page*	<input type="text" value="CLEAR"/>
Toggle Windows	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast
Switch to TV Mode	<input type="checkbox"/>

\* Available when connected to a data broadcast website.





## Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.

## Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.

**1** → **TV** → → **Program Guide**  
→

See Program Guide help for further operations.

Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use. Follow the onscreen instructions.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

▶ P. 8-13

#### Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

▶ P. 8-13

#### TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

▶ P. 8-14

## Customize

### Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- Set Sound On While Handset Closed
- Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV
- Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV
- Set Sound Effects
- Set Visual Image Effects
- Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)

▶ P. 14-22

### Data Broadcasts

- Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- Show Confirmation Window Again

▶ P. 14-23



## Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

**1 [TV] window** ⇨ **Press and hold** Recording starts.

■ **To Capture a Screenshot**  
⇨

Captured screenshots are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

**2** Recording ends.

■ **When Memory Becomes Full**  
Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

## Note

- The channel remains fixed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recording continues even if handset is closed. However, this may affect signal reception.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

## Playing Recorded Programs

**1** ⇨ **Data Folder** ⇨ ⇨ **TV** ⇨

**2** **Video** ⇨ ⇨ **microSD** ⇨



Recorded Program List

■ **To View Captured Screenshots**  
⇨ **Image** ⇨ ⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨

**3** **Select a file** ⇨



Recorded Program Playback Window

■ **To Stop Playback**  
⇨



# Recording/Playing Programs

## Tip

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select **YES** and press

## Playback Operations

Pause/Play	or
Adjust Volume	or press and hold
	or
Mute	
Fast Play <sup>1</sup>	or press and hold
Frame Forward	during pause
Skip Ahead 30 Seconds <sup>2</sup>	Press and hold  or press and hold
Skip Back 30 Seconds <sup>2</sup>	Press and hold  or press and hold
Toggle Sound Effects	
Toggle Portrait and Landscape View <sup>3</sup>	Press and hold
Show/Hide Subtitles	Press and hold

1 Toggle normal and fast play.

- 2 Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.
- 3 Available when **Auto-change Screen** is set to **OFF**.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Recording Programs

- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Delete Recorded Programs

[▶ P. 8-14](#)

#### Playing Programs

- Specify Point to Start Playback

[▶ P. 8-15](#)

### Customize

#### Recording Programs

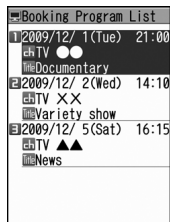
- Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

[▶ P. 14-23](#)



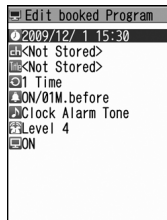
## Setting View Timer

- 1 → TV → → **Booking**  
**Program List** →



Booking Program List

- 2 → **New** →



View Timer Setting Window

- 3 →

- ▶ To Enter Date Manually  
**Enter Date** → → Enter date and time →
- ▶ To Select a Date from Calendar  
**Choose Date** → → Select a date → → Enter time →

- 4 → → **Select a channel** →

- 5 → → **ON, ON/Set Time or OFF** → ( → **Select a time** →

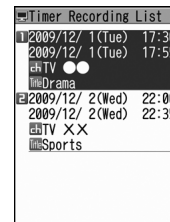
- 6

### Tip

- When the set time arrives, alarm sounds for about five minutes and information (start date/time, channel, program title and animation) appears. Press any key to stop alarm tone.

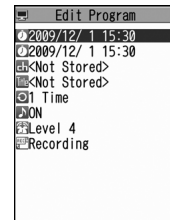
## Setting Record Timer

- 1 → TV → → **Timer**  
**Recording List** →



Timer Recording List

- 2 → **New** →



Record Timer Setting Window



# View/Record Timer

3

Enter date and time to start/end recording.

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

**Enter Date** Enter date and time to start and end recording

▶ **To Select a Date from Calendar**

**Choose Date** Select a date Enter time

4 **Select a channel**

5 **ON or OFF**

6 ( **YES** or **YES (Confirm Once)**)

## Note

- If multiple recordings are set back-to-back (same end and start times), the first recording ends ahead of its set end time.

## Tip

- One minute before recording starts, alarm sounds for about two seconds. Information appears on Display (start and end dates and times, channel, program title and animation) and TV activates. Recording starts at the set start time.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### View/Record Timer

- Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active
- Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- Change Order of Booked Programs
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

▶ P. 8-15



## Channel Settings

### Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

→ TV → ● → Channel Settings → ●  
 → Automatic → ● → YES → ● → YES  
 → ● → Enter title → ●

When a Remote Control Number applies to two or more channels, select an area manually.

### Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

→ TV → ● → Channel List → ● →  
**Not Stored** → → Channel Settings →  
 ● → Select Area → ● → Select area →  
 ● → Select prefecture/city → ● → YES  
 → ●

### Switch Channel Lists

→ TV → ● → Channel List → ● →  
 Select a channel list → ●

## Watching TV

### Start Here

[TV] window .....P. 8-6

### Show Program Information

[TV] window → → Program Info → ●

### Adjust Brightness

[TV] window → → Display Setting →  
 ● → Brightness → ● → Select a level →  
 ●

### Switch Main & Sub Audio

[TV] window → → Sound → ● →  
**Main/Sub Sound** → ● → Select an audio  
 output option → ●

### Switch Audio Channels

[TV] window → → Sound → ● →  
**Sound Switch** → ● → Select an audio  
 channel → ●

**Sound Switch** is available when there is more than one audio channel.

### Show Current Channel List Information

[TV] window → → Channel → ● →  
**Channel Info** → ●

### Add Current Station to Channel List

[TV] window → → Channel → ● →  
**Add Channel** → ● → YES → ●

This function is useful when you find new stations via auto-search (press and hold ).

### Select a Program

[TV] window → → Channel → ● →  
**Tune Service** → ● → Select a service  
 (program) → ●

**Tune Service** is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

## Data Broadcasts

### Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window .....P. 8-7

### Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → →  
**Data Broadcast** → ● → Reload Contents  
 → ●



## Check Certificate for SSL Page

[Data Broadcast Mode] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Data Broadcast**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **Show Certificate**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

## Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Data Broadcast**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **Back to Data BC**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

## TV Link

### Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ..... P. 8-7

### Save TV Links

[Data Broadcast Mode] window  $\Rightarrow$  Select an item  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$  ( $\Rightarrow$  **YES** or **YES (By default)**)  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

$\sqrt{\text{ri}}$  Some TV links may have expiration dates.

## Access Pages/Information from TV Links

$\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV Link**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

$\sqrt{\text{ri}}$  Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:

- $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$  Memo information
- $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$  Data broadcast site
- $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$  Internet content

## Show Details of a TV Link

$\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV Link**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a TV link  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Display detail**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

## Show Number of Saved TV Links

$\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV Link**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **No. of TVlink**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

## Delete TV Links

$\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **TV Link**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a TV link  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$

- $\bullet$  To Select **Delete This**  $\Rightarrow$  **Delete This**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- $\bullet$  To Select **Delete selected**  $\Rightarrow$  **Delete selected**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Select a TV link  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Repeat step of selecting TV link  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- $\bullet$  To Select **Delete All**  $\Rightarrow$  **Delete All**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Enter Security Code  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

## Recording Programs

### Start Here

[Recorded Program List] ..... P. 8-9

### Edit Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List]  $\Rightarrow$  Select a program  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Edit Title**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  Edit title  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

### Reset Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List]  $\Rightarrow$  Select a program  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Initialize Title**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **YES**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

### Switch Views of Recorded Program List

[Recorded Program List]  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Switch List**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\Rightarrow$  **Title** or **Title+Image**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

### Check Information on a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List]  $\Rightarrow$  Select a program  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Show Info**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$

### Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List]  $\Rightarrow$   $\sqrt{\text{ri}}$   $\Rightarrow$  **Check Memory**  $\Rightarrow$   $\bullet$



## Delete Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] ⇨ Select a program ⇨ ⇨

- To Select *Delete This*  
⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ⇨ *YES* ⇨
- To Select *Multiple-choice*  
⇨ *Multiple-choice* ⇨ ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ⇨ (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ⇨ *Delete* ⇨ ⇨ *YES* ⇨
- To Select *Delete All*  
⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ *YES* ⇨

## Playing Programs

### Start Here

[Recorded Program Playback] window  
..... P. 8-9

### Specify Point to Start Playback

[Recorded Program Playback] window ⇨ ⇨ *Location* ⇨ ⇨ to specify point ⇨

## View/Record Timer

### Start Here

[Booking Program List] ..... P. 8-11  
[View Timer Setting] window ..... P. 8-11  
[Timer Recording List] ..... P. 8-11  
[Record Timer Setting] window ..... P. 8-11

### Select a Timer Alarm Tone

[View Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨   
⇨ Select a folder ⇨ (⇨ Select a sub folder ⇨ ) ⇨ Select an alarm tone ⇨

### Enter Title of Booked Program

[View Timer Setting] window/[Record Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ Enter program title ⇨

### Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer

[View Timer Setting] window/[Record Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ *1 Time, Daily or Select Day* ⇨   
 When *Select Day* is specified, select days of the week and press .

## Set Timer Alarm Volume

[View Timer Setting] window/[Record Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ to adjust volume ⇨

## Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

[View Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ *ON* or *OFF* ⇨   
 When *ON* is set, press twice, select *YES* and press from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

## Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active

[Record Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ *Recording or Operation Preferred* ⇨ ⇨   
 When *Recording* is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When *Operation Preferred* is set, a confirmation asking to start recording appears.

## Edit View/Record Timer Settings

[Booking Program List]/[Timer Recording List] ⇨ Select a booked program ⇨ ⇨ Edit each item ⇨





## Change Order of Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] → → **Sort** → → Select a criterion →

## Delete Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] → Select a program → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This*  
→ *Delete This* → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete selected*  
→ *Delete selected* → → Select programs → → Repeat step of selecting programs → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*  
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Select *Delete past* to delete old bookings.

## Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Timer Recording List] → → **Memory Info** →

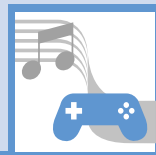
## Check Result of Timer Recording

→ **TV** → → **Result Timer Rec** →

→ Select an entry →

Press to play the recorded program.

# Music Player & S! Appli



<b>About Music Player .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
Playback Windows .....	9-3
Downloading Music .....	9-4
<b>Music Playback.....</b>	<b>9-5</b>
Playing Music.....	9-5
Using Playlists .....	9-6
<b>S! Appli.....</b>	<b>9-8</b>
About S! Appli.....	9-8
Downloading S! Appli.....	9-8
Activating S! Appli .....	9-8
<b>Advanced Features .....</b>	<b>9-10</b>
Music Player.....	9-10
S! Appli .....	9-12

# 9

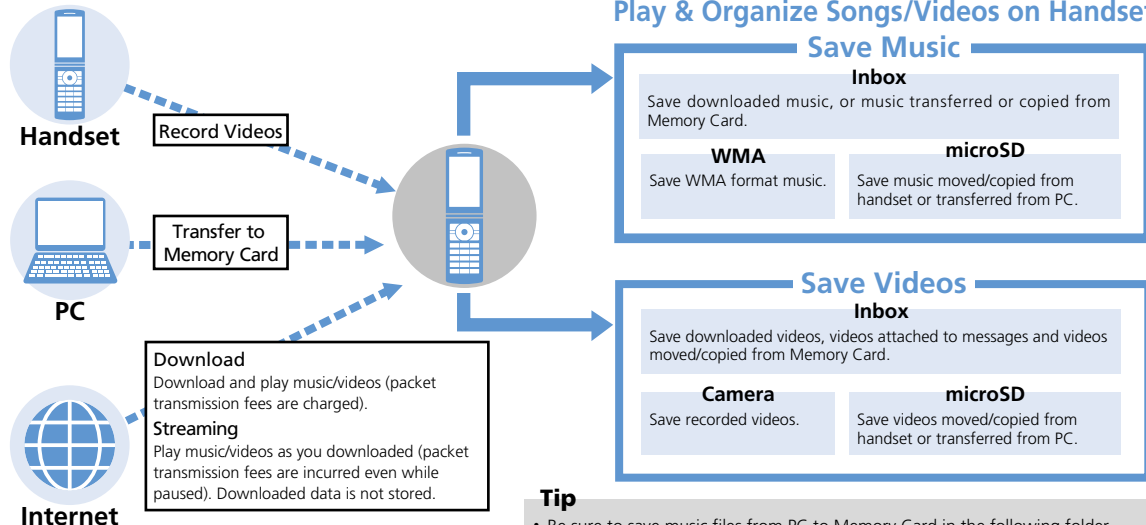


# About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Also play videos with Music Player. When *Auto-change Screen* is set to *ON*, turn handset to its left side to view in full screen mode.

- Some files are unplayable depending on their format.
- Alarm notification, received calls, etc. while playing music will pause play. For videos, select the same video to resume watching.

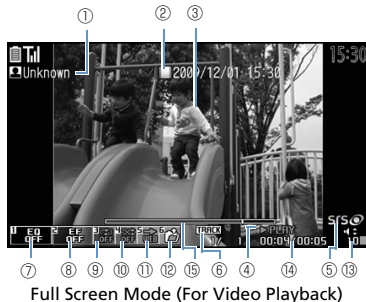
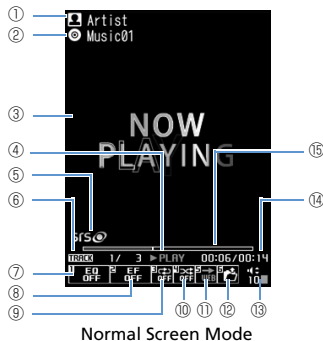


**Tip**

- Be sure to save music files from PC to Memory Card in the following folder.  
 ¥PRIVATE¥MYFOLDER¥My Items¥Music



## Playback Windows



①	Artist Name <Creator> <sup>1</sup>
②	Title
③	Playback Image or Jacket Image <Video> <sup>1</sup>
④	Playback Status ▶PLAY Play    ⏸PAUSE Pause ⏏FF Fast Forward    ⏮REWIND Rewind ▶SLOW Slow Play <sup>2</sup> ⏭PLAY Fast Play <sup>2</sup>
⑤	Sound Effect on (always on)
⑥	Current Track/Total Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Files in Folder)
⑦	Equalizer EQ OFF Pop Live Vocal Break CLLight Woods Ballad Rap Concert Rock Kiss Loud Modes by Music Type/Genre User1 User2 User3 User settings
⑧	Sound Effect EF OFF TruMute CSS14 BassConte Alternative Clearblue Voice Ste Beat Wave Extreme LiveBall Modes by Song Type User1 User2 User3 User settings
⑨	Repeat Mode OFF    ⏮ Repeat All <sup>3</sup> ⏮ Repeat One <sup>3</sup>
⑩	Shuffle Mode ⌘ ON <sup>3</sup> OFF

⑪	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑫	Song/file Selection
⑬	Volume
⑭	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑮	Playback Position ⏮ indicates the current playback position. Use ⏮ to move playback position during pause.

- 1 Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.
- 2 Available during video playback.
- 3 Available during music playback.



## Downloading Music

- Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1  ⇒ **Music** ⇒  ⇒ **Download Music** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

2 Follow onscreen instructions

## Transferring from PC

- Convert music CD data to WMA format and store to memory card using Windows Media® Player.

1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒  ⇒ **USB Mode Setting** ⇒  ⇒ **MTP Mode** ⇒ 

2 Connect handset to your PC with a USB cable

Music can now be transferred by operation from your PC. See the Help for “Windows Media® Player” for details.

3 Transfer WMA data from your PC to memory card

4 Once transferred, remove USB cable from your PC and handset Remove from PC according to method for the OS.

## Note

- Windows Media® Player 10 is unsupported. Use Windows Media® Player 11.

## Tip

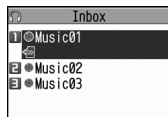
- After transferring WMA data, return *USB Mode Setting* to *Communication Mode*.



## Playing Music

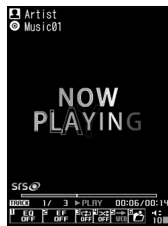
1 → **Music** →

2 Select a folder →



Song List

3 Select a song →



Music Playback Window  
(Video Playback Window)

## Tip

- Alternatively, in Standby, press and hold to start Music Player. Play resumes from where it was paused last.
- Use any Bluetooth® compatible audio device (P. 13-5).
- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:  
 → **Data Folder** → → **Videos** →   
 → Select a folder → → Specify a video to play
- When video is about to be played the first time with **Auto-change Screen** set to **OFF**, a confirmation appears asking whether to play video in Full Screen Mode all the time. Select **YES** or **NO** and press . Confirmation no longer appears.

## Playback Operations

### While Handset is Open

Pause/Play	or
Adjust Volume	or press and hold 
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	or press and hold

Play Next Song/Video	or press and hold
Rewind	Press and hold
Fast Forward	Press and hold
Move Playback Position	during pause
Open/Close Menu	
Select a Song/File	or
Equalizer <sup>1</sup>	
Sound Effect <sup>1</sup>	
Repeat Mode <sup>1</sup>	
Shuffle Mode <sup>1</sup>	
Access the Internet	
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen <sup>2 3 4</sup>	
Toggle Jacket Image	or When there are several jacket images.
End Playback	

1 Press key to toggle on/off.

2 Unavailable during streaming.

3 Available when playing videos.

4 Available when **Auto-change Screen** is set to **OFF**.



## While Handset is Closed

Adjust Volume	⇨ 77- or ⇨
Playing from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	Press and hold ⇨77-
Play Next Song/Video	Press and hold ⇨

## Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

- Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

## Creating a Playlist

- 1 ⇨ **Music** ⇨ ⇨ **Playlist** ⇨



Playlists Window

- 2 ⇨ **Create Playlist** ⇨

- 3 Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ Select a song ⇨

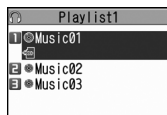
Repeat this step to add other songs.

- 4 When all songs are selected ⇨ ⇨ Enter playlist name ⇨

## Playing Songs from Playlist

- 1 [Playlists] window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨

To play all songs in the playlist, press .



Playlist

- 2 Select a song ⇨

Songs play back in the listed order.

## Tip

- To play all songs, select **All Tracks** in Playlists window and press (twice).

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Playing Music/Video

- Resume Playback
- Use Menu
- File Information
- Repeat
- Set Preferred Sound Quality
- Set Preferred Sound Effect
- Specify Play Start Position
- Change Video Playback Speed
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music
- Open Lyrics
- Open Jacket Image
- Check Operation Methods

▶ P. 9-10

#### Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Volume of Saved Music
- Delete All Music in WMA Folder

▶ P. 9-11

#### Playlists

- Add Songs to Playlist
- Change Order of Playlist Songs
- Cancel Playlist Songs
- Edit a Playlist Name
- Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist



- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

(▶ P. 9-11)

## **Customize**

### Playback Window

- Change Design of Playback Window
- Set Image Display Size

(▶ P. 14-25)





## About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

### About Lifestyle-Appli

Handset includes Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible S! Appli "Lifestyle-Appli" (P. 11-3). Change Lifestyle-Appli settings as any other S! Appli.

### About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network (Internet) connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

#### Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).

### About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Information** ⇒

## Downloading S! Appli

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒ ⇒ **Download S! App** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Follow onscreen instructions.

#### Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you initialize handset when using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, the S! Appli will no longer be usable. You will need to download it again.
- When using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, using the procedures below will resave the S! Appli to your handset and the S! Appli in Memory Card will no longer be usable.
  - Download the same S! Appli with no Memory Card inserted
  - Download the same S! Appli with different Memory Card inserted
 Use an S! Appli resaved to handset as it is in handset, or again move it to Memory Card.

#### Tip

- For how to download Lifestyle-Appli, see P. 11-2.
- See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.

## Activating S! Appli

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒



S! Appli List

- 2 Select an application ⇒

#### Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. When the call ends, a prompt appears. Select **Resume** to resume the S! Appli.
- To end S! Appli: While running, ⇒ **End** ⇒



## More Features

### Advanced

#### S! Appli


- Check S! Appli Information
- Check Volume of Saved S! Appli
- Delete an S! Appli

 P. 9-12)

### Customize


#### When Running S! Appli

- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- Allow S! Appli to Read User Data
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Allow S! Appli to Obtain Location Information
- Reset Security Settings of S! Appli

 P. 14-25)

#### S! Appli

- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

 P. 14-26)



## Music Player

### Start Here

[Music Playback] window .....	P. 9-5
[Video Playback] window .....	P. 9-5
[Song List] .....	P. 9-5
[Playlists] window .....	P. 9-6
[Playlist] .....	P. 9-6

## Playing Music/Video

### Resume Playback

→ **Music** → ● → **Resume Play** → ●

### Use Menu

[Music Playback] window/[Video Playback] window → → Select an item → ●\*  
\*Press to toggle.

### File Information

[Music Playback] window/[Video Playback] window → → **Detail Info** → ● → **File Property** or **Video Info** → ●

### Repeat

[Music Playback] window → → **Action Setting** → ● → **Repeat Setting** → ● → **All Repeat** or **Single Repeat** → ●

### Set Preferred Sound Quality

[Music Playback] window/[Video Playback] window → → **Action Setting** → ● → **Sound Effect** → ● → **Equalizer** → ● → Select user setting 1 to 3 → → Set level for each wavelength → ●

- To return sound quality to initial state  
→ Select user setting 1 to 3 → (twice) → ●

### Set Preferred Sound Effect

[Music Playback] window/[Video Playback] window → → **Action Setting** → ● → **Sound Effect** → ● → **Effect** → ● → Select user setting 1 to 3 → → Set level for each effect → ●

- To set by existing effects  
→ Select user setting 1 to 3 → → → Select effect → ●
- To return sound effect to initial state  
→ Select user setting 1 to 3 → (twice) → ●

### Specify Play Start Position

[Music Playback] window → → **Play Menu** → ● → **Position to Play** → ● → Specify play start position with → ●

### Change Video Playback Speed

[Video Playback] window → → **Play Menu** → ● → **Fast or Slow** → ●  
 Press to return to normal speed.

### Use a Different Function While Playing Music

[Music Playback] window → → **Switch to BGM** → ● → Activate another function  
 In Standby, press and hold during BGM playback to end Music Player.

### Open Lyrics

[Music Playback] window → → **Detail Info** → ● → **Lyric** → ●  
 Use to toggle between lyrics.

### Open Jacket Image

[Music Playback] window → → **Detail Info** → ● → **Jacket Image** → ●  
 Use to toggle jacket images.



## Check Operation Methods

[Video Playback] window → → **Help** →

## Organizing Songs

### Set a Song as Ringtone

[Song List] → Select a song → → **Select Ring Tone** → (→ to specify play start position → ) → Select ringtone item →

### Search for Songs

[Song List] , [Playlists] window or [Playlist] → → **Search** → → **Title** → → Enter condition →   
 Select a song from search results and press to play it.

### Change Order of Songs

[Song List] / [Playlist] → → **Sort** → → Select a criterion →

### Check Volume of Saved Music

[Song List] → → **Memory Info** →

## Delete All Music in WMA Folder

→ **Music** → → **WMA** → → → **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

## Playlists

### Add Songs to Playlist

[Playlist] → → **Edit Playlist** → → **Add Music** → → Select a folder → → Select songs → → → **YES** →   
 The songs you selected are added at the end of the playlist.

### Change Order of Playlist Songs

[Playlist] → Select a song → → **Edit Playlist** → → **Sort Playlist** → → Select a position →

## Cancel Playlist Songs

[Playlist] → Select a song → → **Edit Playlist** → → **Release Settings** →   
 ● To Select **Release This**  
 → **Release This** → → **YES** →   
 ● To Select **Release Selected**  
 → **Release Selected** → → Select songs → → → **YES** →   
 ● To Select **Release All**  
 → **Release All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

## Edit a Playlist Name

[Playlists] window → Select a playlist → → **Edit Playlist Name** → → Edit playlist name →

## Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist

[Playlists] window → → **Update All Tracks** → → **YES** →

## Copy a Playlist

[Playlists] window → Select a playlist → → **Copy to Playlist** →



## Check Playlist Information

[Playlists] window → Select a playlist → → **Playlist Info** → ●

## Delete Playlists

[Playlists] window → Select a playlist → → **Delete Playlist** → ●

- To Select *Delete This*  
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete Selected*  
→ **Delete Selected** → ● → Select playlists  
→ ● → → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete All*  
→ **Delete All** → ● → **YES** → ●

## Delete an S! Appli

[S! Appli List] → Select an S! Appli →   
→ **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ●

## S! Appli

### Start Here

[S! Appli List] ..... P. 9-8

## Check S! Appli Information

[S! Appli List] → Select an S! Appli →   
→ **Properties** → ●

## Check Volume of Saved S! Appli

[S! Appli List] → → **Memory Info** → ●

# Entertainment




<b>Mobile Widget</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
About Mobile Widget .....	10-2
Using Mobile Widget (Japanese) .....	10-2
Downloading Widgets .....	10-2
Adding Widgets .....	10-3
<b>S! Quick News</b> .....	<b>10-4</b>
Using S! Quick News (Japanese) .....	10-4
<b>S! Info Channel</b> .....	<b>10-5</b>
Using S! Info Channel (Japanese) .....	10-5
<b>Books</b> .....	<b>10-7</b>
Obtaining Books .....	10-7
Using BookSurfing® .....	10-7
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>10-8</b>
Mobile Widget .....	10-8
S! Quick News .....	10-8
S! Info Channel .....	10-8
Weather Indicators .....	10-9

# 10



## About Mobile Widget

Download widgets to access the latest information or use various tools.

Access widgets from Standby by pressing .

- Add up to five widgets per Desktop page.  
Select from four Desktop pages.
- In addition to preinstalled widgets, download widgets as needed.
- Screenshots are for illustrative purposes and may differ in appearance from actual widgets.

## Network Widgets


Some widgets require network connection. Transmission fees incur when using such widgets. Follow onscreen instructions when connecting.

- Packet transmission fees apply for downloading widgets.


### Tip

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information for details on transmission fees.

## Using Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Open Desktop page and use widgets. In Standby, press  to show or hide widgets.

### Note

- Handset may briefly connect to network after you press . Packet transmission fees apply.

### 1

Use pointer to select widgets.



Active Desktop Page

### 2 Select a widget

## Select Desktop Page

### 1 [Active Desktop Page]



A ★ appears next to the selected Desktop page.

### 2 Select a Desktop page

## Downloading Widgets

Download and add to Desktop page.

- Store up to 100 widgets.

### 1 Entertainment Mobile Widget Widget Contents Download Widget YES

### 2 Select widgets to download (twice) Installation is complete.



**3 Paste on Desktop** → ● → Select a Desktop page → ● → Move into position → ●

■ To Activate Immediately

→ Open → ●

■ To Check Information

→ Property → ●

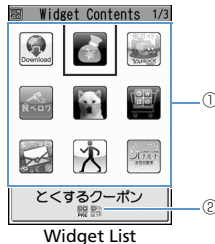
■ To Open List

→ Widget Contents → ●

■ To Return to Previous Window

→ Back → ●

## Widget List Icons & Indicators



①	Widgets
	Access Widget Store.
	Appears when icon is unavailable for widget.
	Widget not installed. Select to install.
②	Widget Information
	Preinstalled widgets
	Downloaded widgets
	Added to Desktop Page
	Sendable by mail
	Infrared transmittable
	Transferable to Memory Card

## Adding Widgets

**1** MENU → Data Folder → ● → Widget → ●

**2** Select widgets to add → [ ] → Paste on Desktop → ● → Select a Desktop page → ● → Move into position → ●

### Tip

- Add up to five widgets in each Desktop page.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Mobile Widget

- Change Position of widgets
- Delete from Desktop Page
- Place widgets in Foreground or Background
- Update Display

▶ P. 10-8

### Customize

#### Mobile Widget

- Check Auto Synchronize Settings
- Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad
- Delete All Widgets from Desktop Page
- Set Whether to Use Cookies
- Delete Cookies
- Set Widgets On/Off

▶ P. 14-27





## Using S! Quick News (Japanese)

Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Quick News.

### Registering News

<Example> Register news on S! Quick News List

- 1 Press and hold



S! Quick News List

- 2 Add News  $\Rightarrow$   $\Rightarrow$  YES  $\Rightarrow$

- 3 Select an item  $\Rightarrow$

Follow onscreen instructions.

### Checking Updated Information

- 1 [S! Quick News List]  $\Rightarrow$  Select an item  $\Rightarrow$

- 2 Select information  $\Rightarrow$

To check next updated information, press .

### More Features

#### Advanced

##### S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered News
- Delete Registered News/Items

P. 10-8

#### Customize

##### S! Quick News

- Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News in Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Information to appear in S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News Images
- Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents

P. 14-27



## Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)

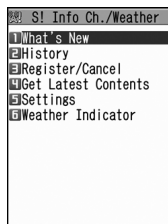
This information service automatically receives the latest news, weather and other information.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Info Channel/Weather Indicators.

## Subscribing for Service

Subscribe by registering to receive service.

- 1 ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Info Ch./Weather** ⇒



S! Info Channel Menu

- 2 **Register/Cancel** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
- Follow onscreen instructions.

## Checking Latest Information

A Desktop Icon notifies you when new information is received.

- 1 ⇒ **Desktop Icons** ⇒



Web Page

Follow onscreen instructions.

### Tip

- To check from a menu:  
[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **What's New** ⇒
- To check previous information:  
[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **History** ⇒ ⇒  
Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Unread or read  
backnumbers are indicated with or .

## Weather Indicators

After subscribing, weather indicators showing current weather appear in Standby.

### Weather Indicators

	Clear (Daytime)		Later
	Clear (Night)		Partial
	Cloudy		Pollen (Low)
	Rain		Pollen (High)
	Snow		UV Rays (Low)
	Thunder		UV Rays (High)

<Example> Cloudy, partial rain

- For a complete list of indicators, see Appendix (P. 15-20).

## Checking Weather Report

- 1 [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **Weather Indicator** ⇒ ⇒ **Weather** ⇒



## More Features

### Advanced

#### S! Info Channel

- Receive Previous Unreceivable Information
- Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages
- Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[▶ P. 10-8](#)

#### Weather Indicators

- Manually Update Weather Information

[▶ P. 10-9](#)

### Customize

#### S! Info Channel

- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information
- Set Font Size for Web Pages

[▶ P. 14-28](#)

#### Weather Indicators

- Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information
- Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby
- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

[▶ P. 14-28](#)



Download e-comics, e-photo albums and other CCF file books.

## Obtaining Books

Download books from the Internet.

- Downloaded books are stored in Data Folder.
- Some books require you to obtain a contents key (right to use contents).

- 1  ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒  ⇒ **Books**  
⇒  ⇒ **Download Books** ⇒   
⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

Follow onscreen instructions.

### Tip

- Downloads from BookSurfing® are also available.

## Using BookSurfing®

View e-comics, e-photo albums, etc. (CCF file).

- 1  ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒  ⇒ **BookSurfing** ⇒   
BookSurfing® is activated.  
See the Help for BookSurfing® for operation.

### Tip

- Alternatively, activate BookSurfing® by selecting ブックサーフィン(BookSurfing) from the S! Appli list.



## Mobile Widget

### Start Here

[Active Desktop Page] ..... P. 10-2

### Change Position of widgets

[Active Desktop Page] ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ⇨ **Change Layout** ⇨ ⇨ Move into position ⇨

### Delete from Desktop Page

[Active Desktop Page] ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ⇨ **Delete Content** ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨

### Place widgets in Foreground or Background

[Active Desktop Page] ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ⇨ **To front** or **To back** ⇨

### Update Display

[Active Desktop Page] ⇨ Point to target widgets ⇨ ⇨ **Renew Display** ⇨

## S! Quick News

### Start Here

[S! Quick News List] ..... P. 10-4

### Manually Update List

[S! Quick News List] ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ⇨ **Refresh This** or **Refresh All** ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨

### View Descriptions of Registered News

[S! Quick News List] ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ⇨ **Outline** ⇨

### Delete Registered News/Items

[S! Quick News List] ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ⇨

- To Select **Delete This** ⇨ **Delete This** ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨
- To Select **Delete All** ⇨ **Delete All** ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ (twice) ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ (twice)

## S! Info Channel

### Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu] ..... P. 10-5  
[Web Page] ..... P. 10-5

### Receive Previous Unreceivable Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇨ **Get Latest Contents** ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨

### Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ **Save File** ⇨ ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ⇨ **Save** ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ) (⇨ YES or NO ⇨ )  
 Select **Play** and press to play melody file.  
 Select **Property** and press to check file information.



### Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[Web Page] → → **Add to Phone Book**  
 → → **YES** →

● To Save to Handset

→ **Phone** → → Select store method →  
 (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone  
 Book → (twice)) → Edit items → (→  
**YES** or **NO** → (→ Enter entry number →

● To Save to USIM Card

→ **USIM** → → Select store method →  
 (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone  
 Book → (twice)) → Edit items → (→  
**YES** →

## Weather Indicators

### Start Here

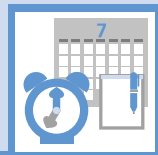
[S! Info Channel Menu] .....P. 10-5

### Manually Update Weather Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] → **Weather  
 Indicator** → → **Manual Update** → →  
**YES** →



# Tools



<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b> .....	<b>11-2</b>	<b>Calculator</b> .....	<b>11-16</b>
About Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-2	<b>Alarm</b> .....	<b>11-17</b>
Using Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-3	Setting Alarm .....	11-17
Activating IC Card Lock .....	11-3	Canceling Alarm .....	11-18
<b>S! GPS Navi</b> .....	<b>11-5</b>	<b>Pedometer</b> .....	<b>11-19</b>
About S! GPS Navi .....	11-5	About Pedometer .....	11-19
Activating a Navi Appli .....	11-5	Setting User Information .....	11-19
Checking Current Location .....	11-5	Activating Pedometer .....	11-19
Using Location Navi (Japanese) .....	11-6	Viewing Data .....	11-20
<b>Life History Viewer</b> .....	<b>11-7</b>	<b>Bar Code Reader</b> .....	<b>11-21</b>
Life History Viewer Window .....	11-7	Scanning Bar Codes .....	11-21
Viewing Data in Chronological Order .....	11-7	Checking Scanned Data .....	11-21
<b>Schedule</b> .....	<b>11-9</b>	<b>Text Reader</b> .....	<b>11-23</b>
Schedule Window .....	11-9	Scanning Text .....	11-24
Saving Events to Schedule .....	11-9	Checking Scanned Text .....	11-24
Checking Saved Events .....	11-10	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>11-26</b>
Deleting Events .....	11-11	Osaifu-Keitai® .....	11-26
<b>To Do List</b> .....	<b>11-12</b>	S! GPS Navi .....	11-26
Saving Tasks .....	11-12	Life History Viewer .....	11-27
Checking Saved Tasks .....	11-12	Schedule .....	11-27
Deleting Tasks .....	11-13	To Do List .....	11-28
<b>Text Memo</b> .....	<b>11-14</b>	Text Memo .....	11-28
Saving Text Memos .....	11-14	Alarm .....	11-28
Deleting Text Memos .....	11-14	Pedometer .....	11-28
<b>Voice Memo</b> .....	<b>11-15</b>	Bar Code Reader & Text Reader .....	11-29
Recording Your Voice .....	11-15		





## About Osaifu-Keitai®

“Osaifu-Keitai®” is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets. Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

## Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

<b>Osaifu-Keitai®</b>	Cellular phone equipped with “FeliCa” contactless IC card technology for reading and writing data by holding phone up to a reader/writer.
<b>IC Card</b>	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets.
<b>Lifestyle-Appli</b>	S! Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

## Tip

- Data saved in IC Card varies by service content and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- Softbank is not liable for damage from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Softbank is not liable for any resulting damages.

## Getting Started

### Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

- Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.
- Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.

### Registrations/Settings

- Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.
- Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

## Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

## Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Osaifu-Keitai** → → **Lifestyle-Appli** → → **Download LifeApp** → → **YES** →

Follow onscreen instructions.

## Note

- Check the battery level before downloading Lifestyle-Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded Lifestyle-Appli are no longer available.



## Activating Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Lifestyle-Appli** ⇒ **●**



Lifestyle-Appli List

- 2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇒ **●**

### Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

### Tip

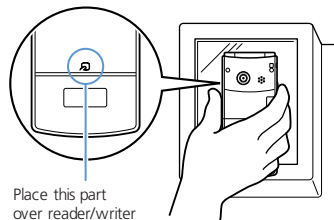
- Lifestyle-Appli is paused when a call arrives. When the call ends, a prompt appears. Select **Resume** to resume the Lifestyle-Appli.
- To end Lifestyle-Appli: While running, **End** ⇒ **●**

## Using Osaifu-Keitai®

### Reader/Writer Transactions

- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

- 1 Hold **logo** up to a reader/writer ⇒ Check scan result on reader/writer display



Place this part over reader/writer

Hold handset parallel to the reader/writer. Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.

### Note

- Softbank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.

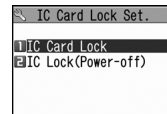
### Tip

- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between **logo** and reader/writer.

## Activating IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to and prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai®.

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **IC Card Lock Set.** ⇒ **●**
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ **●**



IC Card Lock Setting Window

- 3 **IC Card Lock** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **ON** ⇒ **●**  
IC appears in Standby.

## Setting Operation of IC Card Lock after Power Off

- 1 **[IC Card Lock Setting] window** ⇒ **IC Lock (Power-off)** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Maintain or IC Card Lock ON** ⇒ **●**



## Tip

- Alternatively, to set IC Card Lock: In Standby, press and hold **[3]**
- To cancel IC Card Lock: In Standby, press and hold **[3]** → Enter Security Code → ●

## Remote Lock

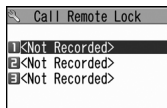
Call from a specified phone to activate Call Remote Lock.

## Saving Numbers to Activate Call Remote Lock

**1** **☰** → **Tools** → ● → **Osaifu-Keitai** → ● → **Call Remote Lock** → ●

**2** Enter Security Code → ●

**3** **ON** → ●



Call Remote Lock Setting Window

## 4 <Not Recorded> ▶

- ▶ **To Enter and Save Numbers**  
● → Enter phone numbers → ●
- ▶ **To save numbers from Phone Book, Redial or Received calls**  
**[☰]** → **Look-up Address** → ● → **Phone Book, Redial or Received Calls** → ● (→ Search Phone Book → ●) → Select a number → ●
- ▶ **To save a Payphone number**  
**[☰]** → **Payphone** → ●

## 5 **☰**

### Tip

- To cancel Call Remote Lock: At Step 3, select **OFF** → ●

## Activating Call Remote Lock

### 1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

Send Caller ID.

### 2 Hang up after handset receives the call

### 3 Within three minutes, repeat **1 - 2** twice

After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces IC Card Lock activation.

## Note

- If series is interrupted by another call, Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

## More Features

### Advanced

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

▶ P. 11-26

### Customize

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for IC Transmission

▶ P. 14-30

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Set Illumination for IC Card
- Delete all Lifestyle-Appli
- Set Whether to Enable Opening from Reader/Writer

▶ P. 14-30



## About S! GPS Navi

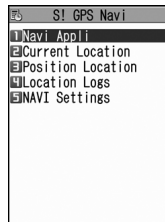
Use this GPS feature to find your location and routes to destinations.

### Note

- Positioning accuracy may be affected by GPS satellite/radio station signal strength.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for damages resulting from provided location information.
- S! GPS Navi applications may require subscription.
- Transmission fees apply, even when positioning fails.
- May incur high transmission fees.

## Activating a Navi Appli

- 1 MENU ⇒ Tools ⇒ ● ⇒ S! GPS Navi  
⇒ ●



S! GPS Navi Window

- 2 Navi Appli ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an application ⇒ ●

### Tip

- To activate Navi appli from positioning for current location:  
[S! GPS Navi] window ⇒ Position Location ⇒ ● ⇒ Navi Appli ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an application ⇒ ●

## Checking Current Location

Confirm your location by map.

- 1 [S! GPS Navi] window ⇒ Current Location ⇒ ●

A confirmation appears. Select *Send* to allow location to be sent.

To disable confirmation, select *No Confirmation*.

- 2 Send ⇒ ●

### Note

- This function is unavailable when *Send Location Info* is set to *Not Send*; change setting to *Confirm* or *Send*.

### Tip

- Alternatively, to check current location:  
[S! GPS Navi] window ⇒ Position Location ⇒ ● ⇒ Read Map ⇒ ●



## Using Location Navi (Japanese)

Search for someone's location. Also determine approximate location of lost handset.

- Separate subscription required.

**1** [S! GPS Navi] window → **NAVI Settings** → ● → **Location Navi**

→ ● → **Service Settings** → ●

Follow onscreen instructions.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### S! GPS Navi

- Add Current Location to Phone Book
- Check Location Logs
- Use Location Logs
- Delete Location Log Records

(▶ P. 11-26)

### Customize

#### S! GPS Navi

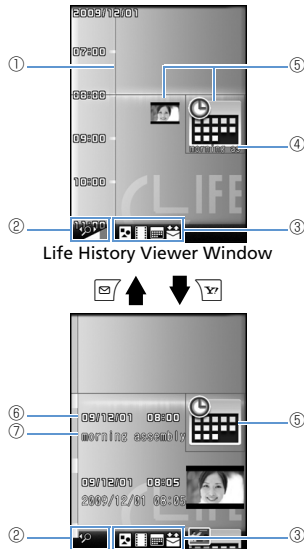
- Set Default Navi Appli
- Begin Positioning Before/After Activating Map
- Save Map URL
- Edit URL Name
- Delete Map URL
- Set Map URL
- Set Location Information Send Method

(▶ P. 14-31)



View activities in chronological order.

## Life History Viewer Window



①	<b>Time Axis</b>
②	<b>Time Axis Zoom</b> Zoom in or out to adjust time span. Select Axis unit between one-minute and one-month. 
③	<b>Data Type</b> Still image, Image data Video Schedule Received (S! Mail/SMS) Sent (S! Mail/SMS) Received & sent S! Mail/SMS messages
④	<b>Data properties</b> No Title: Image files and movie files Title: Schedule events Sender/Receiver Name: S! Mail and SMS
⑤	<b>Icon</b> Thumbnail: Image files Movie files etc. Schedule events etc. S! Mail and SMS
⑥	<b>Date and time</b>
⑦	<b>Title</b> Title/Name: Image files, movie files and schedule events Sender/Receiver Name: S! Mail and SMS

## Tip

- Still images and images in JPEG format can be browsed.

## Viewing Data in Chronological Order

1 → **Tools** → → **Life History Viewer** →



Life History Viewer Window

To reduce/enlarge scale of time axis, press or .



## 2 Select a data item ⇔ ●



Life History Viewer Closeup Window

## 3


The function corresponding to the data type is activated and the data is opened.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Life History Viewer

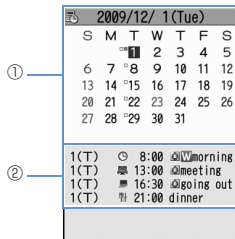
- Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer
- Update Life History Viewer

 P. 11-27)



Save future events to Schedule. Set alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Schedule window.

## Schedule Window



Schedule Window

① **Calendar**  
 Blue date: Saturdays  
 Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays  
 \_\_\_ Today  
 Events for the morning  
 Events for the afternoon

② **Information Panel**  
 Date, day of the week, content type icon, time and saved content

- Content Type Icon
  - (or a user icon) Event
  - Holiday
- Event Repetition Icon
  - Daily event
  - Weekly event
  - Monthly event
  - Annual event
  - Event for over a day

## Saving Events to Schedule

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Schedule** ⇒
- 2 ⇒ **Schedule** ⇒



Event Edit Window

- 3 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter subject** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an icon** ⇒
- 4 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter start/end date and time** ⇒
- 5 ⇒ ⇒ **1 Time, Daily (D), Weekly (W), Monthly (M) or Annually (Y)** ⇒ (⇒ Put checkmarks to days of the week ⇒ )





# Schedule

**6** → → Select an alarm notification option → (→ Enter time)

**7** → → Select an alarm tone type → (→ Select a folder → → Select an alarm tone → )

Folders are unavailable when *Clock Alarm Tone, Voice Announce* or *OFF* is selected.

**8** → → Enter place →

**9** → → Enter details → →

Entered content appears when alarm sounds or vibrates.

## Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or External Display) for approximately five minutes.

When handset is closed, press to stop alarm.

When handset is open, press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

### Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.

## Adding Holidays

**1** [Schedule] window → → *Holiday* →

**2** → → Enter year, month and date →

**3** → → **1 Time or Annually** (Y) →

**4** → → Enter content →

**5**

## Setting Secret Entries

Set private events as secret entries.

- Activate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-7).
- Events set as secret entries are viewable only in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-7).

**1** [Event Edit] window → Enter items →

### Tip

- To cancel setting in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode:  
[Event List]/[Event Details] → → *Release Secret* → → YES →

## Checking Saved Events

**1** → *Tools* → → *Schedule* →

2009/12/ 1(Tue)						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
				1	2	3
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30	31		
1(T) 8:00 @Morning						
1(T) 13:00 @meeting						
1(T) 16:30 @going out						
1(T) 21:00 dinner						

Schedule Window

Press to toggle between weekly and monthly view.

**2** → Select a date with events →

2009/12/ 1(Tue)	
8:00~8:30	@Morning
13:00~14:00	@meeting
16:30~18:00	@going out
21:00~23:00	dinner

Event List



### 3 Select an event

Schedule	
Date(from):	12/ 1(Tue) 8:00 
Date(to):	12/ 1(Tue) 8:30
Tu	
Alarm:ON	
Subject:	morning assembly
Place:	
Details:	








Event Details

## Deleting Events

### To Delete One Event

- 1 In [Event List], select an event or [Event Details]  
- 2 **Delete**    **Delete This**    
 **YES**  

### To Delete Multiple Events














- 1 In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details]   

- 2 **Delete**    **Delete selected**  
 

### 3 Select an event

Repeat this step to specify other events.

### 4 **YES**

## To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date


- 1 In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details]   

- 2 **Delete**    **Delete Past**    
   **YES**    


## More Features

### Advanced

#### Schedule


- Sort Events by Icon
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays
- Search Information by Keyword

 P. 11-27

### Customize


#### Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

 P. 14-2

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification

 P. 14-30



# To Do List

Save tasks to To Do List. Set Alarm to remind you of deadlines.

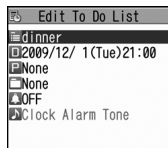
## Saving Tasks

1 → **Tools** → → **To Do List** →

2 → **New** →

■ **To Edit a Saved Task**

→ Select a task → → **Edit** →



Task Edit Window

3 → → **Enter task** →

Task appears when alarm time arrives.

4 →

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

**Enter Date** → → Enter due date and time →

▶ **To Enter Due Date from Calendar**

**Choose Date** → → Select a date on Calendar → → Enter date/time →

▶ **To Cancel a Due Date**

**No Date** →

5 → → **Select a priority level** →

6 → → **Select a category** →

7 → → **Select an alarm notification option** → (→ Enter time)

8 → → **Select an alarm tone type** → (→ **Select a folder** → → **Select an alarm tone** → )

Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone**, **Voice Announce** or **OFF** is selected.

## Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or External Display) for approximately five minutes.

When handset is closed, press to stop alarm.

When handset is open, press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

## Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.

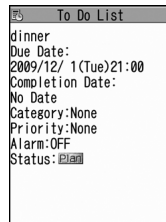
## Checking Saved Tasks

1 → **Tools** → → **To Do List** →



Task List


2 **Select a task** →



Task Details



## Tip









- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g. ).

## Deleting Tasks

### To Delete One Task

- 1 In [Task List], select a task or [Task Details] 
- 2 **Delete**   **Delete This**   
 **YES** 

### To Delete Multiple Tasks

- 1 [Task List] 
- 2 **Delete**   **Delete selected**  

- 3 Select a task   
 Repeat this step to specify other tasks.
- 4   **YES** 

### To Delete All Completed Tasks


- 1 [Task List] 
- 2 **Delete**   **Delete Completed**   **YES** 

## More Features

### Advanced

#### To Do List

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Delete All Tasks

 P. 11-28

### Customize


#### Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

 P. 14-2

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification

 P. 14-30



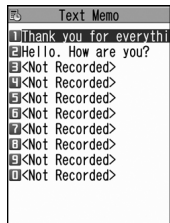
# Text Memo

Save short notes or messages as text memos.

- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

## Saving Text Memos

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Memo** ⇒



Text Memo List

- 2 **<Not Recorded>** ⇒ ⇒ Enter content ⇒

### ■ To Edit a Saved Text Memo

- ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ ⇒ Edit content ⇒

## Deleting Text Memos

### To Delete One Text Memo

- 1 [Text Memo List] ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete This** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

### To Delete Multiple Text Memos

- 1 [Text Memo List] ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒
- 3 **Select a text memo** ⇒   
Repeat this step to specify other text memos.
- 4 ⇒ **YES** ⇒

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Text Memo

- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

(▶ P. 11-28)





Record voice for up to 20 seconds. Handset makes single recording and overwrites each time.

- See P. 3-5 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

## Recording Your Voice

**1**  ⇨ **Tools** ⇨  ⇨ **Voice Memo**  
⇨ 

**2** **YES** ⇨  ⇨ **Record your voice**  
Speak into microphone after short beep sounds through earpiece.  
When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound. To stop recording, press .

### Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.
- See P. 3-4 for details on recording the other party's voice.



# Calculator

**1** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Calculator**  
⇒

**2** Enter numbers with Keypad ⇒  
Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi  
Selector

■ To Calculate Negative Numbers

⇒ ⇒ Enter numbers with keypad ⇒  
Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

**3**   
Result appears.

## Tip

- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, *.E* appears.

## Operations

Enter Number	
+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
× (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Equal)	
Decimal Point	
Cancel Calculation	
Clear Number	



## Setting Alarm

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Alarm** →

Alarm 1/2	
Alarm1	ON
Alarm2	OFF
Alarm3	OFF
Alarm4	OFF
Alarm5	OFF

Alarm List

- 2 Select an alarm →

Edit Alarm	
Alarm1	
6:00	
1 Time	
Clock Alarm Tone	
Level 4	
Snooze 5times/5min	
Auto Power OFF	

Alarm Setting Window

- 3 → → **Enter title** →   
Title appear in Alarm message.
- 4 → → **Enter time** →

- 5 → → **1 Time, Daily** () or **Select Day** () → (→ Put checkmarks to days of the week → )

- 6 → → **Select an alarm tone type** → (→ **Select a folder** → )  
→ **Select an alarm tone** →   
Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone, Voice Announce** or **OFF** is selected.

- 7 → → to adjust volume →

- 8 → →   
▶ **To Set Snooze**  
**ON** → → Enter number of activation times → Enter time interval  
▶ **To Cancel Snooze**  
**OFF** → → Enter ringing duration

- 9 → → **ON or OFF** → →

- **To View Alarm Entries**  
→ Select an entry →

Alarm	
Alarm1	
6:00	
1 Time	
Clock Alarm Tone	
Level 4	
Snooze 5times/5min	
Auto Power OFF	

Alarm Details

## Alarm Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm activates and animation appears (on Display or External Display). When Auto Power is set to ON (Alarm Setting window), handset automatically turns on for alarm.


Press to stop alarm tone with handset closed. Press any key to stop alarm tone with handset open.

When Snooze is set to **OFF**, press any key again to cancel alarm and return to previous window. When Snooze is set to **ON**, alarm tone repeats at the set interval. Press to cancel Snooze.





## Note

- When **Keypad sound** is set to **ON**, two short beeps sound if you:
  - Press a key, after canceling alarm (Snooze not set).
  - Press  while snooze is still set.
- Set the auto power-on function to **OFF** in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, alarm sounds from Earpiece. Snooze does not work even if it is set to **ON**.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Alarm

- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

▶ P. 11-28)

### Customize

#### Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

▶ P. 14-2)

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Alarm Notification
- Set Illumination for Snooze Notification

▶ P. 14-30)

## Canceling Alarm

- 1 [Alarm List] ⇔ Select an alarm ⇔



Each time you press , alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

## Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if alarm is canceled.



## About Pedometer

Use Pedometer to track number of steps and elapsed time. Pedometer also records traveled distance and burned calories/fat.

### Note

- Accuracy may be affected by walking style or vibrations (Calculation is paused when handset vibrates/shakes).
- 歩行距離 (Distance), 消費カロリー (Burned Calories) and 脂肪燃焼量 (Burned Fat) are based on the entered height, weight and stride. Use these results as a rough guide only.
- When handset is inside a bag or holder, place handset in a pocket or compartment. This can prevent handset from moving around and provide a more accurate count.

## きっちり歩数 (Paced Steps)

Pedometer shows two types of steps:

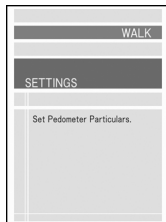
- Paced Steps: Records number of steps taken at a pace of 90 steps/minute for over 10 continuous minutes.
- Steps: Shows total number of steps (including Paced Steps).

## Using Pedometer for the First Time

A confirmation appears the first time you use Pedometer. Press to begin initial setup (go to Step 3 of "Setting User Information").

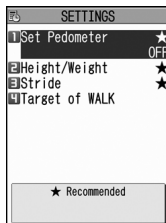
## Setting User Information

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Pedometer** ⇒



Pedometer Window

- 2 **SETTINGS** ⇒



SETTINGS Window

- 3 **Height/Weight** ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Enter height and weight ⇒

- 4 **Stride** ⇒

▶ To Enter Manually

Enter stride ⇒

▶ To Calibrate

⇒ **Calibration** ⇒ (⇒ YES ⇒

⇒ Enter distance to measure ⇒

⇒ Walk distance ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

### Tip

- Calibration is available when *Set Pedometer* is ON.

## Activating Pedometer

- 1 [SETTINGS] window ⇒ **Set Pedometer** ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒

appears when Pedometer is activated.

Step count is saved every 10 minutes.

### Tip

- Pedometer is unavailable when handset power is off.
- To Deactivate Pedometer: [SETTINGS] window ⇒ *Set Pedometer* ⇒ ⇒ OFF ⇒



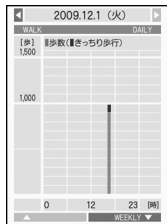
## Viewing Data

1 [Pedometer] window ⇔ **WALK** ⇔



2009.12.1 (火)	
WALK DAILY	
歩数	XXXXX steps
きっちり歩数	XXXXX steps
歩行距離	XXXXX m
歩行時間	X:XX:XX
消費カロリー	XXXXX kcal
脂肪燃焼量	XXXXX g
WEEKLY	

WALK Window (Data View)



WALK Window (Graph View)



2009.12		
日付	歩数	きっちり歩数
1 (火)	XXXXX	XXXXX
2 (水)		
3 (木)		
4 (金)		
5 (土)		
6 (日)		
7 (月)		
8 (火)		
9 (水)		
10 (木)		

WALK Window (List View)

## Tip

- In WALK window, category names appear only in Japanese.
  - 歩数 (Steps)
  - きっちり歩数 (Paced Steps)
  - 歩行距離 (Distance)
  - 歩行時間 (Time)
  - 消費カロリー (Burned Calories)
  - 脂肪燃焼量 (Burned Fat)
- 歩数 (Steps) includes the value for きっちり歩数 (Paced Steps).

## Operations

### Data View

Toggle <b>DAILY</b> , <b>WEEKLY</b> and <b>MONTHLY</b> modes	
Scroll past data	
Activate Music Player	

### Graph View

Toggle <b>DAILY</b> , <b>WEEKLY</b> and <b>MONTHLY</b> modes	
Scroll past data	
Activate Music Player	

Toggle data	to cycle through 歩数→歩行距離→消費カロリー
-------------	---------------------------------

### List View

Select previous/next day (Select date)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to switch to Data View for selected day.</li> </ul>
View other months	
Activate Music Player	
Toggle data	to cycle items through 歩数 & きっちり歩数→歩行距離 & 歩行時間→消費カロリー & 脂肪燃焼量

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Pedometer

- Set a Walking Target
- Reset Today's Data
- Reset All Data



## About JAN & QR Codes

Scan JAN and QR codes with Bar Code Reader.

### JAN Code

JAN codes are linear (1-dimensional) barcodes consisting of parallel bars of varying width. Scan JAN8 (8-digit) and JAN13 (13-digit) codes.

### QR Code

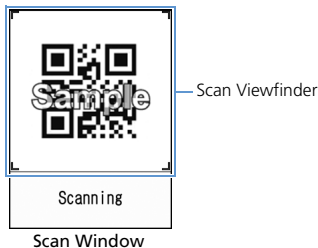
QR codes are matrix (2-dimensional) barcodes which can store information including kanji, kana and pictographs. Some data may require multiple QR codes to store the complete data (split data).

## Scanning Bar Codes

- Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the bar code.

**1** → **Tools** → → **Bar Code Reader** →

## 2 Frame barcode in Scan Viewfinder



Scanning starts automatically.

Use to zoom in/out.

■ **To Cancel**  
→ → **OK** →

■ **To Scan Split Data**  
→ **OK** → (twice) → Scan a QR code  
Repeat to scan another QR code. Scan all split data to access and save information on handset.

## 3 Check scanned data

■ **To Discard Scanned Data**  
→ → **YES** →

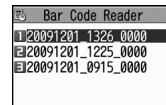
**4** → **Store** → → **YES** → → **OK** →

## Tip

- Make sure to zoom in and focus JAN/QR code in Scan Viewfinder.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned.

## Checking Scanned Data

**1** **[Scan]** window → → **Reading Data List** →



Saved Scan Results List

**2** **Select an entry** →



Scanned Information

## Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).




## More Features

### **Advanced**

#### Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose S! Mail
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

 **P. 11-29)**



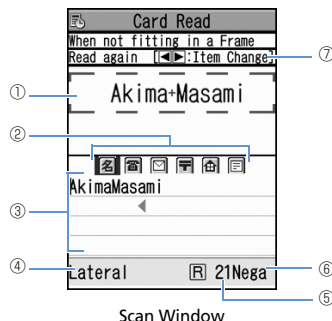
## About Text Reader

Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

## Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.
Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.

## Scan Window



①	Scan Viewfinder
②	Category Icons <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Name</li> <li> Phone number</li> <li> E-mail address</li> <li> Postal code</li> <li> Address</li> <li> Memo</li> <li> To Address</li> <li> Subject</li> <li> Message text</li> </ul>
③	Scanned Text
④	Scan Mode
⑤	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned
⑥	Negative Mode <i>Nega</i> appears when <i>NEGA/POSI Mode</i> is set to <i>Negative Fix</i> .
⑦	Key Guidance



## Scanning Text

- Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the text.

<Example> Scanning in *Card Read* mode

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Text Reader** →
- 2 **New** → → **Card Read** →



Scan Window

- 3 → **Select a category icon** → **Frame text in the Scan Viewfinder**  
Use to zoom in/out.
- 4   
The scanned text appears.
  - **To Rescan the Same Text**  
→ → **YES** →
  - **When Text Extends Beyond View**  
→ to scroll the field

- **To Scan Following Text**  
→ → → **Frame text in the Scan Viewfinder** (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) →
- **To Scan Another Item**  
→ → → **Select a category icon** → **Frame text in the Scan Viewfinder** →

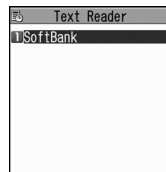
## 5

### Tip

- Make sure to zoom in and focus text in Scan Viewfinder.
- When *Processing* ... appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text is not recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
  - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
  - Decorated characters are scanned.
  - Spaces between characters are uneven.
  - Text is indistinguishable from the background.
  - Ambient lighting is inappropriate.

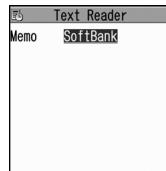
## Checking Scanned Text

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Text Reader** → → **Reading Data List** →



Scanned Text List

- 2 **Select an entry** →



Scanned Text Details




## More Features

### Advanced


#### Scanning Text

- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Printing Status of Text
- Set Guidance ON/OFF
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

 P. 11-29)

#### Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose S! Mail
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

 P. 11-29)





## Osaifu-Keitai®

### Start Here

[Lifestyle-Appli List] .....P. 11-3

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window... P. 11-4

### Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ⇨ **Properties** ⇨ ●

### Check Memory Status

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ ⇨ **Memory Info** ⇨ ●

### Delete a Lifestyle-Appli

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

### Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window ⇨ Select phone number ⇨ ● ⇨ Change phone number ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ● ⇨

### Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window ⇨ Select phone number ⇨ ⇨ **Delete this** or **Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

## S! GPS Navi

### Start Here

[S! GPS Navi] window .....P. 11-5

### Add Current Location to Phone Book

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Position Location** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Add to Phonebook** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Phone** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select add method ⇨ ● (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ● (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ (⇨ **YES** or **NO** ⇨ ●) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ●)

### Check Location Logs

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Location Logs** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ●

### Use Location Logs

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Location Logs** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a location log ⇨ ⇨ **Read Map browser, Read Map S! Appli, Go To** or **Add to Phone Book** ⇨ ● ⇨ Follow onscreen instructions

## Delete Location Log Records

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Location Logs** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a location log ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

- To Select **Delete This** ⇨ **Delete This** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To **Delete selected** ⇨ **Delete selected** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select logs ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To **Delete All** ⇨ **Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●



## Life History Viewer

### Start Here

[Life History Viewer] window ..... P. 11-7

[Life History Viewer Closeup] window  
..... P. 11-8

### Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window/[Life History Viewer Closeup] window → → **Display setting** → ● → Select a data item → ● → Select an item → ● →

Only checked items appear in Life History Viewer window.

### Update Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window/[Life History Viewer Closeup] window → → **Reload** → ●

## Schedule

### Start Here

[Schedule] window ..... P. 11-9

[Event Edit] window ..... P. 11-9

[Event List] ..... P. 11-10

[Event Details] ..... P. 11-11

### Sort Events by Icon

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or [Event Details] → → **Icon Display** → ● → Select an icon → ●

### Check Number of Saved Events

[Schedule] window → → **No. of Schedules** → ●

### Edit an Event

[Event List]/[Event Details] (→ Select an event) → → Edit each item →

### Copy an Event

[Event List]/[Event Details] → → **Copy** → ● → Enter start/end date and time → ● → Edit each item →

Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

### Delete All Events

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or [Event Details] → → **Delete** → ● → **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → Select an item → ● → **YES** → ●

### Reset Holidays

[Schedule] window → → **Reset Holiday** → ● → **YES** → ●

### Search Information by Keyword

[Event Details] → → **Quick Search** → ●

- To Enter a Keyword  
→ **Enter Keyword** → ● → Enter keyword → ● → or → ● → Select an item from search results → ●
- To Enter a Keyword with Quote Keyword  
→ **Quote Keyword** → ● → **Subject, Details** or **Place** → ● → Move cursor to head of keyword to search → ● → Move cursor to last character of keyword to search → ● → or → ● → Select item from results → ●
- To Select a Keyword from Previous Searches  
→ **History** → ● → Select keyword → ● → or → Select item from results → ●



## To Do List

### Start Here

[Task List] ..... P. 11-12  
 [Task Details] ..... P. 11-12

### Sort Tasks by Category

[Task List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Category Display** ⇨  
 ● ⇨ Select a category ⇨ ●

### Change Order of Tasks

[Task List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Sort/Filter** ⇨ ● ⇨  
 Select a criterion ⇨ ●

### Set Task Status

[Task List]/[Task Details] (⇨ Select a task)  
 ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Change Status** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a  
 status ⇨ ●

👉 The set status is indicated by the status icon  
 in Task List and in Task Details.

👉 When **Completion** is set as status, enter the  
 completion date.

### Delete All Tasks

[Task List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Delete  
 All** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨  
**YES** ⇨ ●

## Text Memo

### Start Here

[Text Memo List] ..... P. 11-14

### Save a Text Memo to Schedule

[Text Memo List] ⇨ Select a text memo ⇨  
 [☰] ⇨ **Edit Schedule** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter each  
 item ⇨ [☑]

👉 Entered text appears in the Details field when  
 Event Edit window is opened.

### Sort Text Memos by Category

[Text Memo List] ⇨ Select a text memo ⇨  
 [☰] ⇨ **Category** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a category  
 ⇨ ●

### Check Text Memo Information

[Text Memo List] ⇨ Select a text memo ⇨  
 [☰] ⇨ **Text Memo Info** ⇨ ●

### Delete All Text Memos

[Text Memo List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨  
**Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨  
 ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

## Alarm

### Start Here

[Alarm List] ..... P. 11-17  
 [Alarm Details] ..... P. 11-17

### Cancel All Alarms

[Alarm List]/[Alarm Details] ⇨ [☰] ⇨  
**Release All** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

### Edit Alarm Settings

[Alarm List]/[Alarm Details] (⇨ Select an  
 alarm) ⇨ [☑] ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ [☑]

## Pedometer

### Start Here

[Pedometer] window ..... P. 11-19  
 [SETTINGS] window ..... P. 11-19  
 [WALK] window ..... P. 11-20

### Set a Walking Target

[SETTINGS] window ⇨ **Target of WALK** ⇨  
 ● ⇨ Select item for target ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter  
**Step, Distance or Calorie** ⇨ [☑]

👉 Alternatively, set from Function menu in  
 WALK window.



## Reset Today's Data

[WALK] window → → *Today Data*  
 Reset → ● → YES → ●

## Reset All Data

[Pedometer] window → → *All Data*  
 Reset → ● → Enter Security Code → ●  
 → YES → ●

## Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

### Start Here

- [Saved Scan Results List] ..... P. 11-21
- [Scanned Information] ..... P. 11-21
- [Scan] window ..... P. 11-24
- [Scanned Text List] ..... P. 11-24
- [Scanned Text Details] ..... P. 11-24

## Scanning Text

### Correct Scanned Text

[Scan] window → Scan text → to move cursor to the character you want to correct  
 → Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list  
 Press to toggle upper case and lower case.

## Edit Scanned Text

[Scan] window → Scan text → → *Edit*  
 → ● → Edit text using keypad  
 To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press , select *Select Recog. Data* and then press ●.

## Set Printing Status of Text

[Scan] window → → *NEGA/POSI Mode*  
 → ● → *Auto setting, Positive Fix* or *Negative Fix* → ●

- Set to *Positive Fix* when dark-colored text is printed on a light-colored background.
- Set to *Negative Fix* when light-colored text is printed on a dark-colored background.

## Set Guidance ON/OFF

[Scan] window → → *Guidance OFF* or *Guidance ON* → ●

## Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

[Scan] window → → *Vertical Writing* or *Lateral Writing* → ●

## Using Scanned Data

### Make a Call

[Scanned Information] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a phone number →   
 → *Dialing* → ● → *Voice Phone* or *Video Call* → ● → *Dial* → ● → Talk → to end call

### Compose S! Mail

[Scanned Information] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select an e-mail address →   
 → *Create S! Mail* → ● → Compose and send S! Mail

### Access the Internet

[Scanned Information] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a URL → → *Internet*  
 → ● → YES → ●



## Save to Phone Book

[Scanned Information] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Add to Phone Book** → ●

### ● To Select *Phone*

→ **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ YES or NO → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)

### ● To Select *USIM*

→ **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ Overwrite or Add → ●) (→ YES → ●)

## Save a Bookmark

[Scanned Information] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a URL → → **Add Bookmark** → ● (twice) → Select a folder → ●

## Search Phone Book

[Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Search Phone Book** → ● → Search Phone Book

## Save a Text Memo

[Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Add to Memo** → ●

## Copy Text

[Scanned Information] / [Scanned Text Details] → → **Copy** → ● → Select beginning of characters → ● → Select end of characters → ●

## Edit Title of Scanned Data

[Saved Scan Results List] → Select an entry → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit title → ●

## Delete Scanned Data

[Saved Scan Results List] / [Scanned Text List] → Select an entry →

### ● To Select *Delete This*

→ **Delete This** → ● → YES → ●

### ● To Select *Delete All*

→ **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → YES → ●

# Data Management



<b>About Data Folder .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>	<b>Advanced Features.....</b>	<b>12-16</b>
<b>Accessing Files .....</b>	<b>12-3</b>	Accessing Files .....	12-16
Opening Files.....	12-3	Editing Files .....	12-17
Quick Album (Slideshow).....	12-5	Managing Folders .....	12-17
Creating Animations .....	12-6	Managing Files .....	12-18
Using Playlist (Melodies) .....	12-7	Memory Card.....	12-18
Using Playlists (Videos).....	12-7		
<b>Editing Files .....</b>	<b>12-9</b>		
Editing Still Images.....	12-9		
Editing Videos .....	12-10		
<b>File &amp; Folder Management.....</b>	<b>12-11</b>		
Creating a Folder.....	12-11		
Moving Files to a Different Folder .....	12-11		
<b>About Memory Card.....</b>	<b>12-12</b>		
Inserting & Removing a Memory Card.....	12-12		
<b>Managing Memory Cards .....</b>	<b>12-13</b>		
Formatting a Memory Card .....	12-13		
Accessing Memory Card Data .....	12-13		
Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card.....	12-14		
Configuring Print Settings of Images.....	12-15		

# 12



# About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. Files are automatically saved to folders by file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

## Folders & Files in Data Folder

### My Picture<sup>1</sup>

Image files (Camera images and downloaded files such as My Pictograms)

### Widget

Downloaded widgets files

### Books

Downloaded book files

### PDF

Downloaded PDF files and saved PDF files

### Melody

Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

### Ring Songs-Music

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full®, downloaded music files and music files transferred from PCs

### Key Illumination

Downloaded key illumination files

### Other Documents<sup>2</sup>

Saved document files (Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, Text)

### S! Appli

Downloaded S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli

### Videos<sup>1</sup>

Video files (captured/downloaded video files and Wi-Fi contents)

### TV<sup>1</sup>

Recorded programs<sup>2</sup> and captured screenshots<sup>3</sup>

1 When *Auto-change Screen* is set to *ON*, turn handset 90° counterclockwise during playback for Landscape View.

2 Save to memory card only.

3 Save to handset only.

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

YES → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a data item → ● → → YES → ●

● You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.

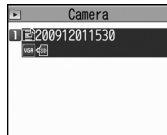
● You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.



## Opening Files

<Example> Open Video File

- 1 → **Data Folder** → ● → **Videos** → ●
- 2 Select a folder → ●



File List

- 3 Select a file → ●



Opened File Window

### Tip

- Select files in S! Appli to activate S! Appli. For information about S! Appli, see P. 9-8.
- Select files in Ring Songs-Music or Videos to activate Music Player. For details, see P. 9-3.

## Opening Files on Memory Card

- 1 → **Data Folder** → ●
- 2 Select a folder → ● → **microSD** → ●
- 3 Select a folder → ●
- 4 Select a file → ●

## Indicators in File List

Indicators show file type and available operation.

- QVGA movie
- VGA movie
- Attach to mail
- Insert in Graphic Mail
- Set as wallpaper, etc.
- Set as a ringtone
- Infrared transmission
- Copy/move to memory card
- Edit
- Video over size savable to handset (Viewable only in Memory Card)

## Using Picture Files

Open a picture file from My Picture folder.



Picture Window

Operations in Picture Window

Switch Files	
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In full screen mode, view vertical images in Portrait View; horizontal images in Landscape View.</li> </ul>
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	● →  or
Show at Actual Size*	● →
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	

\* Press ● to return to the original size.





# Accessing Files

## Playing/Using Melody Files

Open a file from Melody folder.



Melody Window

Playback Operations

Switch Files	
Adjust Volume	or
Stop	
End	

## Operations during Key Illumination File Playback

Key Backlight flashes according to the file selected in Key Illumination.

The following operations are possible while checking files.

Stop	
Set to Key Illumination	

## Using PDF & Other Document Files

Open a file from PDF or Other Documents folder.



PDF Window

Scrollbar

Toolbar



Other Documents Window

Scrollbar

Toolbar



## Operations in PDF/Document File

Scroll	
Toggle Page and Toolbar Operation	
Zoom Out	
Display Entire Page	
Zoom In	
Display Previous Page	
Display Next Page	
Scroll Page Up	<sup>1</sup>
Scroll Page Down	<sup>2</sup>
Search Text	
Show/Hide Toolbar and Scrollbar	
Help	
Search Next	
Search Previous	

- 1 In Other Documents window, opens previous page.
- 2 In Other Documents window, opens next page.

## Toolbar Icons

Use to select icons and to toggle icon view.

	Specify zoom
	Specify page
	Zoom out/zoom in
	Entire page/100% zoom/match width to Display
	First/previous/next/last page
	Search text
	Rotate L/R 90 deg
	Copy text
	Toggle show/hide shrunk page image
	Toggle text wrap and no wrap at Display width
	View operation descriptions for Toolbar and keys
	Single page/continuous/two page view

## Quick Album (Slideshow)

View JPEG images saved in My Picture. Set images to switch automatically or manually.

- Quick Album is also available for JPEG images saved to Memory Cards.

- 1 → **Data Folder** → → **My Picture** → →



Quick Album Window



## Tip

- Alternatively, activate this function from ⇒ *Camera* ⇒ ⇒ *Quick Album* ⇒
- Open folder images in the following order. When opening from *Camera*, images in the folder set with *Select to Save* and in *Camera* open first.
  - Inbox
  - Camera
  - User created folder
  - microSD pictures

## Playback Operations

### During Manual Play

Previous/next image	
Zoom in/out	
Image scroll (zoomed in)	<p> - </p> <p>Scroll in below directions.</p>

Return to original size (zoomed in/out)	
Image switch effect (Slide → Fade → Cube → RGB)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Effect changes with each press.</li> <li>Slide: Slides to right or left</li> <li>Fade: Fade in/out</li> <li>Cube: Rotates as cube</li> <li>RGB: Splits into red, green and blue then rotates</li> </ul>
Detect face and zoom in (Face)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to toggle when several faces are detected.</li> </ul>
Start Photo Slide-show (auto play)	

### During Auto Play

Previous/next image	
End Photo Slide-show (auto play)	

## Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.

- ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ ⇒ *My Picture* ⇒ ⇒ *Original Animation* ⇒



Original Animation List

- ⇒
- Select a frame ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a still image ⇒
- Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.
  - To Cancel an Assigned Image** ⇒ Select a frame ⇒ ⇒ *Release This* ⇒



## 4

### Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on memory card cannot be used.

### Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List and press to play the animation.

## Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

1 → **Data Folder** → → **Melody** → → **Playlist**

2 → **Edit Playlist** →

### ■ To Clear Playlist

→ → **Release Playlist** → → **YES**  
→

3 **Select a number** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select a melody** →

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

### ■ To Cancel an Assigned Melody

→ **Select a number** → → **Release This** →

## 4

### Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

## Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

1 → **Data Folder** → → **Videos** → → **Playlist** →



Playlists Window

2 **Select a playlist** → → **Edit Playlist** →

3 **Select a number** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select a video** →   
Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.


### ■ To Cancel an Assigned Video

→ **Select a number** → → **Release This** → → **YES** →

## 4



## Tip


- Select a playlist from a playlist folder and press  to play.

## More Features

### Advanced


#### Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change Order of Files
- Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

 P. 12-16


#### Viewing Images

- Play Animation from the Beginning
- Compose Four Images to Make One
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

 P. 12-16


#### Playing Melodies

- Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

 P. 12-17


#### Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List
- Clear a Playlist

 P. 12-17

#### Viewing PDF Files

- Check PDF Properties

 P. 12-17

## Customize

### Display Settings

- Set Image List View

 P. 14-5



## Editing Still Images

### Basic Flow of Operations

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an image** ⇒



Picture Window

- 2 ⇒ **Edit Image** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an editing option** ⇒ ⇒ **Edit image**
- 3 to end editing
- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒   
Select **YES** to overwrite original image.  
Select **NO** to save as a new file.

### Note

- Only images with in File List can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.
- For images larger than WVGA, some edit options are unavailable. File size is automatically reduced to WVGA or smaller when saved.

### Adding a Frame

- 1 [Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Image** ⇒ ⇒ **Frame** ⇒
- 2 **Select a frame** ⇒
  - To Change Frame ⇒
  - To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees ⇒
  - To Cancel Frame ⇒ ⇒ **Cancel** ⇒
- 3
- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

### Adding Stamps

- 1 [Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Image** ⇒ ⇒ **Marker Stamp** ⇒
- 2 **Select a marker stamp** ⇒
  - To Rotate Marker Stamp ⇒ ⇒ **90° to right, 90° to left or 180°** ⇒
  - To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp ⇒ ⇒ **Scale up or Scale down** ⇒
  - To Cancel Marker Stamp ⇒
- 3 ⇒ **Select a position** ⇒
  - To Paste Another Marker Stamp ⇒ ⇒ **Select a marker stamp** ⇒
- 4
- 5 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

### Pasting a Text Stamp

- 1 [Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Image** ⇒ ⇒ **Character Stamp** ⇒
- 2 **Enter text** ⇒



## ■ To Edit Text

→ → **Character input** → ● → Enter text → ●

## ■ To Change Text Color

→ → **Character Color** → ● → ● → Select a color → ● → Press to toggle color palettes.

## ■ To Change Font Type

→ → **Font Type** → ● → **Gothic** or **Ming-Cho** → ●

## ■ To Change Font Size

→ → **Font Size** → ● → Select a font size → ●

**3** ● → **Select a position** → ●

**4** ●

**5** ● → **YES** or **NO** → ●

## Cropping an Image

**1** [Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → ● → **Trim away** → ●

**2** Select a size → ● → ● to select an area → ●

**3** ●

**4** ● → **YES** or **NO** → ●

## Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

**1** → **Data Folder** → ● → **Videos** → ● → **Select a folder** → ● → **Select a video** → → **Edit Video** → ●

**2** → **Trim Videos** → ● → **Any Size, 300KB or 2MB** → ● ▶

▶ **To Start from Beginning**



▶ **To Start Partway Through Video**

● → At a desired point → ● →

Video plays while selected portion is trimmed.

**3** ● to stop →

Selected portion plays.

When **300KB** or **2MB** is selected, clipping stops automatically when the size of clipped video reaches 300 KB or 2 MB.

**4** ● (twice) → **YES** → ●

## Note

- Only QCIF (176 x 144) or smaller videos with in File List can be clipped.

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Editing Files

- Retouch an Image
- Adjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

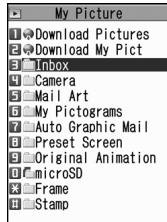
(▶ P. 12-17)



## Creating a Folder

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder type ⇒

<Example>When My Picture is Selected



Folder List

- 2 ⇒ **Add Folder** ⇒ ⇒ Enter folder name ⇒

### Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

## Moving Files to a Different Folder

- 1 [File List] ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Move** ⇒
  - ▶ **To Move Selected File**  
*Move this* ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
  - ▶ **To Move Multiple Files**  
*Move selected* ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ (repeat to select another file) ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
  - ▶ **To Move All Files in a Folder**  
*Move all* ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody, Video, Book or PDF Folder

▶ P. 12-17

#### Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

▶ P. 12-18





# About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

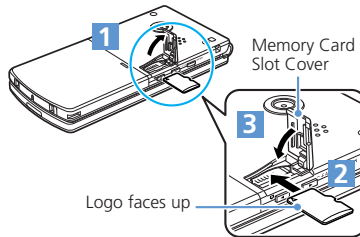
- Handset supports memory cards of up to 16 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing and reading data with that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

## Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a memory card.


### Insertion

- 1 Open Slot Cover**
- 2 Insert memory card into Memory Card Slot until it locks**  
Insert gently with the printed logo facing up.



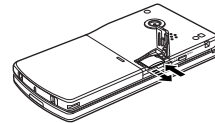
- 3 Close Slot Cover**

### Tip

- If  appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

### Removal

- 1 Press and release**  
Gently pull out memory card.



### Note

- Memory card may spring out.
- Memory card may break if inserted or removed with force.



## Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒ ⇒

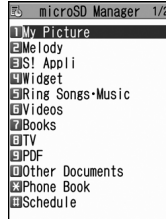
2 ⇒ **microSD format** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒

### Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

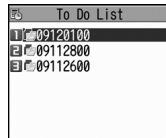
## Accessing Memory Card Data

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒ ⇒



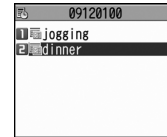
microSD Manager Window

2 **Select a category** ⇒



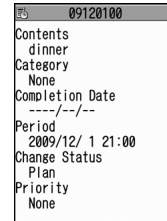
File List

3 **Select a file** ⇒



Data List

4 **Select a data item** ⇒



Data Details



## Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs, books, PDF files

## Copying Handset Data to Memory Card

Copy Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

**1** [Data List] → → **Copy to microSD** →

▶ **To Copy Selected Data**

**Copy this** → (→ Select destination folder → )

▶ **To Copy Multiple Data**

**Copy selected** → (→ Select copy destination folder → ) → Select a data item → (repeat to select another data) → → **YES** →

▶ **To Copy All Data**

**Copy All** → → Enter Security Code → (→ Select copy destination folder → ) → **YES** →

### Tip

- When one Phone Book entry or Schedule event that is set as secret is copied to memory card, its secret setting is canceled.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in My Picture folder.
- Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.

## Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

### To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

**1** → **Data Folder** → → **Select a folder type** → → **microSD** → → **Select a folder and sub-folder** → → **Select a data item** → → **Copy to Phone** →

▶ **To Copy Selected Data**

**Copy this** →

▶ **To Copy Multiple Data**

**Copy selected** → → Select a data item → (repeat to select another data) → → **YES** →

▶ **To Copy All Data**

**Copy All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →



## To Copy PIM Data to Handset

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a PIM data type** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a data item** ⇒ ⇒ **Copy/OW to Phone** ⇒
  - ▶ **To Copy Selected Files**  
**Copy This** ⇒
  - ▶ **To Copy Multiple Files**  
**Copy selected** ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ (repeat to select another file) ⇒
  - ▶ **To Copy All Files**  
**Copy All** ⇒
- 2 **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ )

### Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.
- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.

## Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD** ⇒ ⇒ **DCIM** ⇒
- 2 **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒ ⇒ **DPOF setting** ⇒
  - ▶ **To Specify Selected Images**  
**DPOF set One** ⇒
  - ▶ **To Specify Multiple Images**  
**DPOF set Choice** ⇒ ⇒ Select a still image ⇒ (repeat to select another image) ⇒
- 3 **Print** ⇒ ⇒ **Print Sheets** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter number of prints** ⇒
- 4 **a Date** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒
- 5

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Memory Card

- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

(▶ P. 12-18)



## Accessing Files

### Start Here

- [File List] ..... P. 12-3
- [Opened File] window ..... P. 12-3
- [Picture] window ..... P. 12-3
- [Melody] window ..... P. 12-4
- [PDF] window ..... P. 12-4
- [Original Animation List] ..... P. 12-6
- [Playlists] window ..... P. 12-7

## Opening Files

### Check File Information

[File List] / [Opened File] window (⇨  
 Select a file) ⇨ ⇨ **Image Info, Melody  
 Info, Properties, Property, Key illumi. Info,  
 or Document Info** ⇨ ●

### Change Order of Files

[File List] ⇨ ⇨ **Sort** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a  
 criterion ⇨ ●

### Set an Image to Appear in Standby

[File List] / [Opened File] window (⇨  
 Select a file) ⇨ ⇨ **Set as Display** ⇨ ●  
 ⇨ **Stand-by Display** ⇨ ● (⇨ Select a  
 layout ⇨ ● ⇨ Confirm preview ⇨ ●)  
 Set images to appear when making calls or  
 sending messages.

### Set a Video to Appear in Standby

[File List] ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ⇨  
**Stand-by Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

### Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

[File List] / [Opened File] window (⇨  
 Select a file) ⇨ ⇨ **Ring Tone** ⇨ ● ⇨  
 Select an item ⇨ ●  
 Only melodies can be set as ringtones from  
 Opened File window.

## Viewing Images

### Play Animation from the Beginning

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ **Retry** ⇨ ●

### Compose Four Images to Make One

[File List] ⇨ ⇨ **Composite Image** ⇨ ●  
 ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ● ⇨ Repeat  
 the same step to assign three other images  
 to their respective positions ⇨ ⇨ ●  
 Only images in JPEG format can be used for  
 creating composite images.  
 Copyright-protected images are unavailable.  
 Images saved on memory card cannot be  
 used.  
 Some images cannot be used depending on  
 their size.

### Set Display Size of an Image

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ **Set Image Disp.**  
 ⇨ ● ⇨ **Normal or Fit in Display** ⇨ ●

### Edit Title of an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] ⇨ Select an  
 animation ⇨ ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit  
 title ⇨ ●

### Cancel an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] ⇨ Select an  
 animation ⇨ ⇨ **Release Animation** ⇨  
 ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●



## Playing Melodies

### Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

[Melody] window ⇨ ⇨ *Set Repeat Play* ⇨ ⇨ *ON* ⇨

## Playing Videos

### Switch Display Format of File List

[File List] ⇨ ⇨ *List Setting* ⇨ ⇨ *Title* or *Title+Image* ⇨

### Clear a Playlist

[Playlists] window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ⇨ *Release Playlist* ⇨ ⇨ *YES* ⇨

## Viewing PDF Files

### Check PDF Properties

[PDF] window ⇨ ⇨ *Document Property* ⇨

## Editing Files

### Start Here

[Picture] window.....P. 12-9

### Retouch an Image

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Retouch* ⇨ ⇨ Select an effect ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

### Adjust Image Brightness

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Brightness* ⇨ ⇨ to adjust brightness ⇨ (twice) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

### Rotate an Image

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Rotate* ⇨ ⇨ *90° to right, 90° to left* or *180°* ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

### Change Image Size

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Change Size* ⇨ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

### Correct Backlight

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Correct Backlight* ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

### Refresh Skin Tone

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Refresh Skin Tone* ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

## Managing Folders

### Start Here

[Folder List] .....P. 12-11

### Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Folder Name* ⇨ ⇨ Edit folder name ⇨

Only names of user-created folders can be edited.



## Delete a Folder

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** → → Enter Security Code → (→ YES → ) → YES →

- To Select *Ring Songs-Music*

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** → → Enter Security Code → → **Delete This, Delete Selected** or **Delete All** → (→ Select a folder → → Repeat to select another folder → (→ YES or NO → ) → YES →

- Only user-created folders can be deleted.
- Files in the selected folder are also deleted.
- When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

## Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody, Video, Book or PDF Folder

[Folder List] → → **Delete all Image, Delete All or Delete all Doc.** → → Enter Security Code → → YES →

- When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

## Managing Files

### Start Here

[File List] .....P. 12-3

### Edit a Title in My Picture File List

[File List] → Select an image file → → **Edit Title** → → Edit title →

Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

### Check Volume of Saved Files

[File List] → → **Memory Info** →

### Edit a File Name

[File List] → Select a file → → **Edit File Name** → → Edit file name →

Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

## Delete Files

[File List] → Select a file → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete this* → **Delete this** → → YES →
- To Select *Delete selected* → **Delete selected** → → Select file → (repeat to select another file) → → YES →
- To Select *Delete all* → **Delete all** → → Enter Security Code → → YES →

## Memory Card

### Start Here

[microSD Manager] window ..... P. 12-13  
 [File List] .....P. 12-13  
 [Data List] .....P. 12-13  
 [Data Details] .....P. 12-13

### Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window, [File List], [Data List] or [Data Details] → → **microSD Info** or **Memory Info** →



### Check & Repair Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window → →

**Check microSD** → ● → **YES** → ●

To cancel checking and repairing a memory card, press or .

Some memory cards may not be repairable.

### Delete Data on Memory Card

[File List] → Select a data item → →

**Delete** → ●

● To Select *Delete this*

→ *Delete this* → ● → **YES** → ●

● To Select *Delete selected*

→ *Delete selected* → ● → Select file →

● (repeat to select another file) → →

**YES** → ●

● To Select *Delete all*

→ *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code

→ ● → **YES** → ●

### Cancel Print Settings of Images

→ **Data Folder** → ● → **My Picture** →

● → **microSD** → ● → **DCIM** → ● →

Select a folder → ● → Select a still image

→ → **DPOF setting** → ● → **DPOF set**

**One or DPOF set Choice** → ● (→ Select an

image → ● (repeat to select another

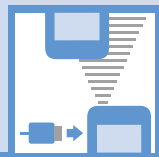
image) → → **Print OFF** or **All Print OFF**

→ ●





# Connectivity



<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>	Searching & Connecting to Priority Connections .....	13-14
Getting Started.....	13-2	Checking or Changing Wi-Fi Settings .....	13-15
Transferring Data via Infrared.....	13-3	Using Wi-Fi Contents.....	13-16
<b>Bluetooth®</b> .....	<b>13-5</b>	<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	<b>13-17</b>
About Bluetooth® .....	13-5	Bluetooth® .....	13-17
Adding a Bluetooth® Device .....	13-6	Wi-Fi.....	13-17
Connecting .....	13-6		
Calling with Wireless Device.....	13-7		
Playing music and audio with Wireless Device.....	13-7		
Suspending Bluetooth® Connections.....	13-8		
Setting Bluetooth® to Connection Standby .....	13-8		
<b>PC Connection</b> .....	<b>13-9</b>		
USB Driver.....	13-9		
Data Transfer .....	13-9		
Setting USB Mode .....	13-9		
Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC .....	13-9		
Using Handset as Modem .....	13-10		
<b>Wi-Fi</b> .....	<b>13-11</b>		
About Wi-Fi .....	13-11		
Activating Wi-Fi.....	13-11		
Connecting to Wi-Fi .....	13-12		
Setting Priority Connections.....	13-14		

# 13



## Getting Started

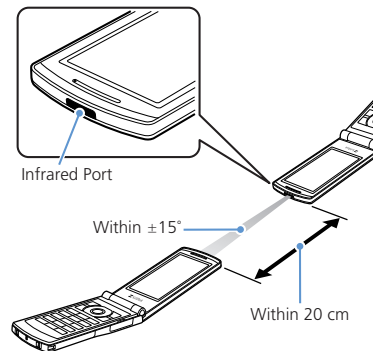
Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices. The following files are transferable via infrared:

- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Books
- Widgets
- PDF Files
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received/sent messages (S! Mail/SMS)
- Draft messages (S! Mail/SMS)
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser)

## Precautions

- File transfer may not start depending on receiving device status. Some settings or content may be lost depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.

- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.



## Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

## Transferring Data via Infrared

### Sending One File

Send one file at a time.

- 1 Select a file → → **Send Ir Data** →
- 2 Set the receiving device to receive data
- 3 Align Infrared Ports → **YES** →   
Transfer starts.  
Message appears when file transfer is complete.  
■ **To Cancel Transfer**  
→

### Note

- File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.

### Tip

- In a data list window, press to send a JPEG image via high-speed transmission.
- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

### Receiving One File

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Receive Ir Data** → → **Receive** →
- 2 Align Infrared Ports  
Transfer starts.  
■ **To Cancel Transfer**  
→
- 3 When file is received → **YES** →   
File is saved to handset.  
File is discarded if no operation is performed within 30 seconds of transfer.

### Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.









- 1 In a data list window/data details window → → **Send All Ir Data** → ( → )
- 2 Enter Security Code → → Enter authentication password
- 3 Set the receiving device to receive data
- 4 Align Infrared Ports → **YES** →   
Transfer starts.  
When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.  
■ **To Cancel Transfer**  
→

### Note

- All file transfer is unavailable for still image, melody, video, My Pictogram, song, book and widget files.
- File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.



## Receiving All Files

- 1  ⇒ **Tools** ⇒  ⇒ **Receive Ir Data** ⇒  ⇒ **Receive All** ⇒ 
  - 2 **Enter Security Code** ⇒  ⇒ **Enter authentication password**
  - 3 **Align Infrared Ports** ⇒ **YES** ⇒   
Transfer starts.
  - 4 **When an overwrite confirmation appears** ⇒ **YES** ⇒   
Transfer starts.  
Message appears when files are saved to handset.
- **To Cancel Transfer**  
⇒ 

## Note

- Existing handset files are overwritten (e.g. When all messages are transferred, existing messages, including protected messages are overwritten. When all Phone Book/Schedule entries are transferred, all data including secret data is overwritten).
- File transfer stops when maximum storable capacity is reached.

## More Features

### **Customize**

#### Phone Book

- Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

[▶ P. 14-12](#)

#### Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Ir Transmission

[▶ P. 14-30](#)



## About Bluetooth®

Transmit data by wireless connection between Bluetooth® compatible devices (wireless headset, handsfree device, audio device, etc.).

Handset Bluetooth® specifications are as follows.

Version	Bluetooth® standard Ver. 2.0 + EDR compliant
Profiles	HSP: Headset Profile HFP: Hands-free Profile A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (stereo, high quality) AVRCP: Audio/Video Remote Control Profile

## Precautions

- Handset is not guaranteed for connection/operation with all Bluetooth® devices.
- Connected Bluetooth® devices must be certified as Bluetooth® standard as designated by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on other party device characteristics/specifications, there may be inability to connect, incompatible operation/display methods, or inability to transmit data even if other party is Bluetooth® standard.
- The frequency band (2.4 GHz) used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other kinds of devices. Interference from other devices may result in decreased transmission speed/distance or disconnection.
- Static noise may occur depending on the connection device and environment during wireless/handsfree talk.
- TV audio is unavailable with Bluetooth® devices non-compliant with the copyright protection standard SCMS-T.
- Bluetooth® devices and wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11b/g) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). Use near a device equipped with wireless LAN will result in interference. If you experience noise or poor/no connection, try the following.

- Keep the Bluetooth® device at least 10 m away from wireless LAN devices.
- Turn wireless LAN devices off when using a Bluetooth® device within 10 m of wireless LAN devices.

## Handset Functions

Headset Profile	Wireless talk is available when connected to a wireless headset.
Handsfree Profile	Handsfree talk is available when connected to a car navigation and using a microphone-speaker.
Audio Profile	Enjoy music/TV audio when connected to a wireless headset and audio device.

## Note

- When connected to a wireless headset or handsfree compatible device, a ring tone sounds when **Forward Ring Tone** is set to **OFF** and **Headset Usage Setting** is set to **Headset-speaker**.



## Adding a Bluetooth® Device

Search and add a device.

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Bluetooth** →



Bluetooth Menu

- 2 **Register New Devices** →   
Handset searches for devices.  
Added device appears in Device List.
- 3 **Select device to add** → → **YES** →

### ■ When Passkey Required

→ Enter Bluetooth® passkey →   
Enter the same Bluetooth® passkey (4 to 16 characters) for both sending or receiving devices.

Receiving device must have passkey entered within 30 seconds after the sending device.

Enter the designated passkey for a handsfree device (other party).

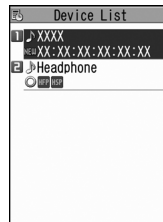
### Tip

- When a Bluetooth® device is not added, search and add from *Device List* in Bluetooth menu.

## Connecting

Connect to an added device.

- 1 **[Bluetooth Menu]** → **Device List** →



### ■ To Search for New Bluetooth® Device

→

- 2 **Select target device** →
- 3 **Select service** →

(blue) flashes once connected.

If no Bluetooth® connections are made for a certain time, power save mode activates and (black) appears.

For a device capable of connecting to multiple services, a confirmation window will ask if you want to connect to another service.

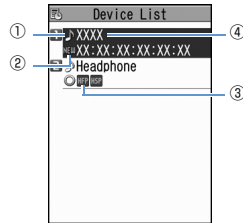


## ■ To Discontinue a Connected Service

→ ● → YES → ●

## Device List

The type of added device and service are shown by indicators.



Device List

①	<b>Device Type<sup>1</sup></b> PC Phone Audio/Video Other
②	<b>Status</b> Added Detected

③	<b>Services<sup>2</sup></b> Headset Handsfree Audio Remote Control
④	<b>Device Name</b> Bluetooth® address appears for non-added devices.

- 1 An icon with a key mark appears for protected devices.
- 2 Service status appears as below.

Icon	Letters	Backgr.	Border	Status
	gray	—	—	Connection history: No
	white	—	—	Connection history: Yes
	white	—	white	Connection standby
	black	green	white	Connected

## Calling with Wireless Device

Connect wireless headsets or handsfree devices.

### 1 Connect to target device

### 2 Make/receive call with device

Talk switches each time you press and hold .

## Playing music and audio with Wireless Device

Connect to a device with audio device to play Music Player music and TV audio.

### 1 Connect to target device

### 2 Play music, TV or etc.

### Tip

- To adjust volume, use volume control on Bluetooth® device.
- Connecting once to an audio device with audio service is stored as a connection history. When handset's Bluetooth® function is active (**Bluetooth ON**), audio devices with a connection history are automatically connected through audio service when playing music or TV.





## Suspending Bluetooth® Connections

Suspend all Bluetooth® functions (connected or on standby) and disable Bluetooth®.

- 1 [Bluetooth Menu] ⇨ **Bluetooth OFF** ⇨  ⇨ **YES** ⇨

### Tip

- To activate Bluetooth®:  
[Bluetooth Menu] ⇨ **Bluetooth ON** ⇨

## Setting Bluetooth® to Connection Standby

Set standby status for all added devices.

- 1 [Bluetooth Menu] ⇨ **Accept Registered** ⇨

- 2 **Accept All** ⇨

- To Set Individually  
⇨ **Separate Setting** ⇨  ⇨ Select service ⇨

Services with checked boxes enter Connection Standby.

- To Release all Connection Standby  
⇨ **Release All** ⇨

## More Features

### Advanced

#### Bluetooth®

- Protect Added Device
- Change Name of Added Device
- Delete Added Device
- Open Information for Added Device

▶ P. 13-17)

### Customize

#### Bluetooth®

- Set Detection Time for Device
- Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device
- Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device
- Check Handset Bluetooth® Information

▶ P. 14-31)



Connect handset to a PC via USB cable to use the following functions.

- USB cable is sold separately.

Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 13-9).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read and write data with memory card (P. 13-9).
MTP Mode	Use Windows Media® Player to save music data to memory card (P. 9-4).

\* USB driver must be installed in advance.

## USB Driver

Install USB Driver to connect handset to a PC. Download USB Driver from the following site (Japanese).

<http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>

## Data Transfer

Use SoftBank Utility Software to transfer data between handset and a PC. Download SoftBank Utility Software from the following site (Japanese).

<http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>

- Install USB Driver before using SoftBank Utility Software.

## Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒ ⇒ **USB Mode Setting** ⇒

- 2 **Communication Mode or microSD Mode** ⇒

Set to **Communication Mode** for using SoftBank Utility Software or using handset as a modem (packet transmission).

Set to **microSD Mode** for accessing memory card data from a PC.

## Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and access memory card data from the PC.

- Set **USB Mode Setting** to **microSD Mode** in advance.

- 1 **Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable**

This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.

- 2 **When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC**

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.



### Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

### Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).



## About Wi-Fi

Use Wi-Fi for data transmission at higher speed than a 3G/GSM system.

- Only available in Japan. If abroad, **ON/OFF** switches to **OFF** and Wi-Fi is unavailable.
- Use Keitai Wi-Fi to connect to Yahoo! Keitai with household wireless LAN or public wireless LAN.
- **ON/OFF** in **Wi-Fi Setting** is set to **ON** by default. Set to **OFF** if not using Wi-Fi. If set to **ON**, connection priority is for Wi-Fi.

### Note

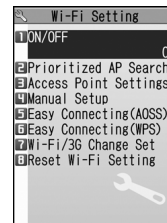
- Handset may automatically switch from Wi-Fi access to 3G access depending on signal conditions. Packet transmission fees apply for 3G access.

## Tip

- Set a confirmation to appear when switching from Wi-Fi to 3G access.  
 MENU ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Wi-Fi Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Wi-Fi/3G Change Set ⇒ ● ⇒ Confirm Mode ⇒ ●
- Subscription to an internet service is required.
- Prior application required to use Keitai Wi-Fi. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).
- For information on services supported by Keitai Wi-Fi, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website: (<http://www.softbank.jp/>)
- To access a household wireless LAN or public wireless LAN access point, use Direct Access (Direct Access available with PC Site Browser only).
- Voice/video calls unavailable with Wi-Fi connections. Move to a 3G service area to make calls.

## Activating Wi-Fi

- 1 MENU ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Wi-Fi Setting ⇒ ●



Wi-Fi Setting Window

- 2 **ON/OFF** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

### Note

- *Other Function active Cannot operate* may appear when toggling **ON/OFF** in Wi-Fi Setting. Wait a while and try again.
- When using S! Quick News (P. 10-4) outside a Wi-Fi area, the handset will receive news information via 3G access. Packet transmission fees apply for 3G access.
- For a pay-as-you-go public wireless LAN service, fees are incurred until you log out. It is also recommended that you deactivate Wi-Fi after using the service.
- Network (Internet) S! Appli are unavailable with Wi-Fi access.



## Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold to set Wi-Fi *ON* or *OFF*.
- When Wi-Fi is activated, the access points saved in *Priority Settings* (P. 13-14) are automatically searched for connection in order.

## Network Connection Status

Indicators show connection strength/status.

		Connected via 3G network
		Keitai Wi-Fi available
		Connected via Keitai Wi-Fi
		Direct Access available
		Connected via Direct Access
		Wi-Fi out of range

## Note

- When appears, continuous standby time may be shorter.
- When accessing via Keitai Wi-Fi, make sure for Keitai Wi-Fi appears before using.
- When accessing via Direct Access, make sure appears before using.

## Connecting to Wi-Fi

Configure required settings for connecting to Wi-Fi from one of three methods: “Easy Connecting (AOSS),” “Easy Connecting (WPS)” or “Access Point Search.”

- The setting is saved as a profile.
- A profile contains the setting items required for connecting to access points. A profile can also be edited directly.
- Bluetooth® devices and wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11b/g) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). Use near a Bluetooth® device will result in interference. The same may occur if wireless LAN is used while handset is connected to a Bluetooth® device. If you experience noise or poor/no connection, try the following.
  - Keep Bluetooth® devices at least 10 m away from wireless LAN devices.
  - Turn Bluetooth® device off when using a wireless LAN device within 10 m of Bluetooth® device.
  - Avoid using handset’s Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions at the same time.

## Tip

- If the profile is set using *Easy Connecting (AOSS)*, *Easy Connecting (WPS)* or *Access Point Search*, it is automatically saved in *Priority Settings* (P. 13-14).

## Easy Connecting (AOSS)

Enable Wi-Fi connection by only pressing an access point’s button.

- Available only when access points support AOSS™.

**1 [Wi-Fi Setting] window** ⇨ **Easy Connecting(AOSS)** ⇨ ●

**2 YES or NO** ⇨ ●

**3 Press access point's AOSS button until lamp blinks**

Profile is saved. Wi-Fi connection is established.

## Note

- While setting up profile, all handset transmissions are disabled (voice/video calls, Internet, mail, etc. are unavailable). If setup fails, handset transmissions may remain unavailable for a while.



## Easy Connecting (WPS)

Enable Wi-Fi connection using PIN Method or PBC Method (Pushbutton Method).

- Available only when access points support WPS.

**1** [Wi-Fi Setting] window ⇨ **Easy Connecting(WPS)** ⇨ ●

**2** **YES or NO** ⇨ ●▶

▶ **To Set Using PIN Method**

**PIN Method** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an access point ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter shown PIN code as access point

▶ **To Set Using PBC Method**

**PBC Method** ⇨ ● ⇨ Press access point's pushbutton

Profile is saved. Wi-Fi connection is established.

### Note


- While setting up profile, all handset transmissions are disabled (voice/video calls, Internet, mail, etc. are unavailable). If setup fails, handset transmissions may remain unavailable for a while.

## Searching Access Points

Search for access points near handset for connection.

**1** [Wi-Fi Setting] window ⇨ **Access Point Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Access Point Search** ⇨ ●

**2** **Select an access point** ⇨ ●

When an access point with  is selected, entry of a security key with **Set Security Method** (P. 14-33) is required.

**3** **YES** ⇨ ●

**4** **Set items** ⇨ 

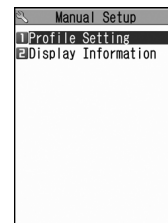
For settable items, see P. 14-32.

Profile is saved. Wi-Fi connection is established.

## Setting Each Profile

Connect to access point(s) after setting profiles individually.

**1** [Wi-Fi Setting] window ⇨ **Manual Setup** ⇨ ●



Manual Setup Window

**2** **Profile Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile ⇨ ●

**3** **Set items** ⇨  (twice) ⇨ 

For settable items, see P. 14-32.

**4** **Save to Priority Settings** (P. 13-14)



## Using BB Mobilepoint

BB mobilepoint profile is saved to handset by default. Set ID & password to connect to BB mobilepoint.

- BB mobilepoint is a public wireless LAN service provided by SOFTBANK TELECOM Corp. to participating providers.
- BB mobilepoint is available in areas that have the BB mobilepoint sticker.
- BB mobilepoint requires no fees from Keitai Wi-Fi subscribers.

- [Manual Setup] window** ⇨ **Profile Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **BB モバイルポイント** ⇨ ●
- Public Wi-Fi Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **ON** ⇨ ●
- ID** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter ID ⇨ ●
- Password** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter password ⇨ ●
- ☑ (three times) ⇨ ☑ (Finish)
- Save to **Priority Settings** (P. 13-14)

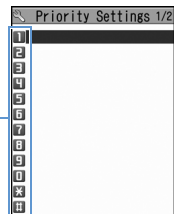
### Note

- If a profile other than *ID* or *Password* has been changed, connection to BB mobilepoint may be unavailable. If connection is no longer available, perform *Reset Profile* (P. 13-15). After initializing the profile, configure settings again.

## Setting Priority Connections

Set connections (access points) that will be prioritized over other connections. If you enter an area with access points already set as priority connections, handset connects automatically.

- [Wi-Fi Setting] window** ⇨ **Access Point Settings** ⇨ ●
- Priority Settings** ⇨ ●



Handset connects in order starting from top item number.

Priority Settings Window

- Select a placement priority ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile ⇨ ● ⇨ ☑

## Searching & Connecting to Priority Connections

If handset does not connect automatically to an access point, search again for an access point saved to *Priority Settings*.

- [Wi-Fi Setting] window** ⇨ **Prioritized AP Search** ⇨ ●

### Note

- *Other Function active Cannot operate* may appear when trying to perform *Prioritized AP Search*, even if another function is not activated with Multitask. In this instance, wait a while then perform *Prioritized AP Search*.

### Tip

- Alternatively, in Standby, press and hold ● to perform *Prioritized AP Search*.



## Checking or Changing Wi-Fi Settings

### Checking Profile Settings

- 1 [Manual Setup] window ⇨ **Profile Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile ⇨ ●
- 2 Select settings to check ⇨ ☒

### Changing Profile Settings

- 1 [Manual Setup] window ⇨ **Profile Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile ⇨ ●
- 2 Change items ⇨ ☒ (twice) ⇨ ☒ (Finish)  
For changeable items, see P. 14-32.

### Copying Profiles

- 1 [Manual Setup] window ⇨ **Profile Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile to copy ⇨ ☒
- 2 **Copy** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a copy destination profile ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- 3 ☒ ⇨ ☒ (Finish)  
All items except for the profile name are copied.

### Initializing Profile Settings

- 1 [Manual Setup] window ⇨ **Profile Setting** ⇨ ●
- 2 Select a profile to initialize ⇨ ☒ ⇨ **Reset Profile** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ● ⇨ ☒ ⇨ ☒ (Finish)

#### Note

- If a profile saved to *Priority Settings* is initialized, it is also removed from *Priority Settings*.

### Checking Connection and MAC Address

- 1 [Manual Setup] window ⇨ **Display Information** ⇨ ●
- 2 **Connection Status** or **MAC Address** ⇨ ●

Connection Status	Indicates the connection profile name, ESSID and the connection channel status. Press ● to update connection status.
MAC Address	References individual hardware addresses used to differentiate hosts in Wi-Fi.

#### Note

- The initial MAC address is "00:00:00:00:00:00." After Wi-Fi setup is complete, the correct MAC address appears.





## Using Wi-Fi Contents

Use Wi-Fi Contents to view large-size videos.

- 1  → **Entertainment** ⇌ ● ⇌  
**Wi-Fi Contents** ⇌ ●

Follow onscreen instructions.

## More Features

### Advanced

Wi-Fi

- Add Priority Connection
- Overwrite Priority Connection
- Insert Priority Connection
- Delete Priority Connection
- Change Order of Priority Connection

[▶ P. 13-17](#)

### Customize

Wi-Fi

- Show Confirmation Before Switching to 3G
- Reset Wi-Fi Setting
- Change Profile Name
- Set ESSID
- Select Wireless Mode Setting
- Set IP Address
- Set DNS Server
- Use HTTP Proxy Server
- Set Security Method
- Set to Use Public Wireless LAN
- Set Access Mode

[▶ P. 14-32](#)



## Bluetooth®

### Start Here

[Device List] .....P. 13-7

#### Protect Added Device

[Device List] ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ⇨ **Protection Setting** ⇨ ●

If already protected, select **Protection Setting** to cancel protection.

#### Change Name of Added Device

[Device List] ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ⇨ **Change Device Name** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter device name ⇨ ●

#### Delete Added Device

[Device List] ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

#### Open Information for Added Device

[Device List] ⇨ Select target device ⇨ ⇨ **Description** ⇨ ●

## Wi-Fi

### Start Here

[Priority Settings] window .....P. 13-14

#### Add Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window ⇨ ⇨ **Add** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile to add ⇨ ● ⇨



The profile is added as the connection with the lowest priority.

#### Overwrite Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window ⇨ Select a profile to overwrite ⇨ ⇨ **Overwrite** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile to overwrite with ⇨ ● ⇨

#### Insert Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window ⇨ Select a placement to insert profile ⇨ ⇨ **Insert** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile to insert ⇨ ● ⇨

#### Delete Priority Connection

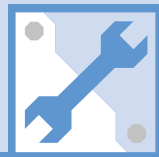
[Priority Settings] window ⇨ Select a profile to delete ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ● ⇨

#### Change Order of Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window ⇨ Select a profile to change placement priority ⇨ ⇨ **Change Priority** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a profile to change placement priority with ⇨ ● ⇨



# Customization



Clock, Display & Sounds .....	14-2
Phone Book & Calls.....	14-12
Mail.....	14-16
Internet.....	14-20
TV .....	14-22
Camera .....	14-24
Player & S! Appli.....	14-25
Entertainment.....	14-27
Other Settings.....	14-29

## 14



## Clock

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Clock** ⇒ ●

Hide Clock	⇒ <b>Clock Display</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Display</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●
Clock Size	⇒ <b>Clock Display</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Size</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●
Clock Color	⇒ <b>Clock Display</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Color</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Black</b> or <b>White</b> ⇒ ●
Set Auto Time Adjustment	<p>⇒ <b>Set Main Time</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Time Adjustment</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Auto</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field.</li> <li>• If auto time adjustment is still not performed, open Yahoo! Keitai top page again and perform <b>Reload</b> before returning to Standby.</li> </ul>
Manually Adjust Time	<p>⇒ <b>Set Main Time</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Time Adjustment</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Manual(Date Time Set)</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒ ●</p>
Summer Time	⇒ <b>Set Main Time</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Summer Time</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ ●

Time Zone (Sub Clock)	⇒ <b>Set Sub Clock</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Display Method</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Always</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ●
Hide Sub Clock	⇒ <b>Set Sub Clock</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Display Method</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	⇒ <b>Set Sub Clock</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Summer Time</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ ●
Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)	⇒ <b>Set Sub Clock</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Area Name</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Display</b> ⇒ ●

## Alarm

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Clock** ⇒ ●

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	⇒ <b>Alarm Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Operation Preferred</b> or <b>Alarm Preferred</b> ⇒ ●
Change Alarm Tone	⇒ <b>Clock Alarm Tone Set</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an alarm tone



## Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off*	<p><b>MENU</b> → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Clock</b> → ● → <b>Auto Power ON</b> or <b>Auto Power OFF</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> → ● → Enter time → ● → <b>1 Time</b> or <b>Daily</b> → ●</p>
------------------------	--

\* When near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, or in areas where handset use is forbidden (aboard aircraft, in hospitals, etc.), set **Auto Power ON** to **OFF** and turn handset power off.

## Style Mode Settings

Start Here	<b>MENU</b> → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Style Mode Setting</b> → ●
Set Display Design Collectively	<p>→ Select a style → ● → <b>YES</b> → ● (→ <b>YES</b> or <b>NO</b> → ●)</p>
Check Style Mode Settings	<p>→ Select a style → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details of some items can be checked by selecting an item and pressing .</li> </ul>
Edit Title of a Style	<p>→ Select a style →  → <b>Edit Title</b> → ● → Edit title → ●</p>
Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite	<p>→ <b>お気に入り</b> (Favorites) →  →  → <b>Take Setting Info</b> → ● → <b>YES</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The current style mode settings can later be recalled collectively from <b>お気に入り</b> when they are changed.</li> </ul>

Change Each Item for Favorites	<p>→ <b>お気に入り</b> (Favorites) →  → Select an item → ● → Set an image</p>
Clear All Favorite Settings	<p>→ <b>お気に入り</b> (Favorites) →  → <b>Reset Setting Info</b> → ● → <b>YES</b> → ●</p>

## Display Settings

Start Here	<b>MENU</b> → <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Display</b> → ●
Wallpaper	<p>→ <b>Display Setting</b> → ● → <b>Stand-by Display</b> → ● → <b>My Picture</b> or <b>Videos</b> → ● → Set an image/video (→ Select a layout → ● (twice))</p>
Show Calendar in Standby	<p>→ <b>Display Setting</b> → ● → <b>Stand-by Display</b> → ● → <b>Calendar</b> → ● → <b>Background</b> → ● → Set an image → ● (twice)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>No Background</b> if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar.</li> <li>Press ●, use  to select the calendar and press ● to operate it. Use  to switch to the previous/next month. Press ● to activate Schedule.</li> </ul>



# Clock, Display & Sounds

Set Wallpaper Image to Change When Handset Returns to Standby	<p>⇨ <b>Display Setting</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Stand-by Display</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Random Display</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Each time handset returns to Standby, a different wallpaper image appears. Images are randomly selected from the set folder.</li> </ul>
Set a Wake-up Image	<p>⇨ <b>Display Setting</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Wake-up Display</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>My Picture</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Set an image</p>
Set a Wake-up Message	<p>⇨ <b>Display Setting</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Wake-up Display</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Message</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter message ⇨ ●</p>
Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	<p>⇨ <b>Display Setting</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Dialing, Video Call Dialing or Mail Sending</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Set an image</p>
Set Image or Video for Incoming Call/Message	<p>⇨ <b>Display Setting</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Calling, Video Call Calling or Mail Receiving</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Select Calling Disp. or Select Receiving Disp.</b> ⇨ ● (⇨ <b>My Picture</b> or <b>Videos</b> ⇨ ●) ⇨ Set an image/video</p>
Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window	<p>⇨ <b>Display Setting</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Retrieve New or Mail Rec'd Result</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Set an image</p>
Display Color Scheme	<p>⇨ <b>Display Design</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Color Theme</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ●</p>

Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design	<p>⇨ <b>Display Design</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Icon Pattern</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Battery Icon</b> or <b>Antenna Icon</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ●</p>
Set Softkey Color	<p>⇨ <b>Display Design</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Soft Key</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ●</p>
Set Font Type	<p>⇨ <b>Font</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Font Type</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Gothic</b> or <b>Ming-cho</b> ⇨ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</li> </ul>
Set Font Thickness	<p>⇨ <b>Font</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Thickness</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Thin</b> or <b>Bold</b> ⇨ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</li> </ul>
Set Font Sizes Collectively	<p>⇨ <b>Font</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Character Size</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Standard</b> or <b>X-large</b> ⇨ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Items settable with <b>Separate Setting</b> for <b>Character Size</b> can be set collectively.</li> <li>Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</li> </ul>
Set Font Size for Each Function Window	<p>⇨ <b>Font</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Character Size</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ <b>Separate Setting</b> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a window ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a size ⇨ ● ⇨ ☒</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.</li> <li>In PC Site Browser, only available in Small Screen view.</li> </ul>



<b>Interface Language</b>	<p>⇒ 言語選択 ⇒ ● ⇒ 日本語 (or English) ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change interface language from Japanese to English:</li> </ul> <p>⇒ MENU ⇒ 設定 ⇒ ● ⇒ ディスプレイ ⇒ ● ⇒ Language ⇒ ● ⇒ English ⇒ ●</p>
<b>Set Image List View</b>	<p>⇒ Viewer Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Picture or Title ⇒ ●</p>
<b>Set Auto-change Screen</b>	<p>⇒ Auto-change Screen ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to do training in tilting handset.</li> </ul>
<b>Guard from Prying Eyes</b>	<p>⇒ Privacy Angle ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternatively, press and hold  in Standby to toggle on and off. The other party may hear a short beep when this operation is performed during a call.</li> <li>When <i>Privacy Angle</i> is set, Display is whitish and the viewing angle is narrower.</li> <li>Turn power off then on again to cancel Privacy Angle.</li> </ul>
<b>Show New S! Mail/SMS Message Info While Viewing TV</b>	<p>⇒ Quick Info Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Display Sender or Display Sender/Subject ⇒ ●</p>
<b>Set Effect for Screen Change</b>	<p>⇒ Screen Effect ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select an item and press  to check details.</li> </ul>

## Display Quality

- ⇒ Image Display Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Normal, Vivid or Dynamic ⇒ ●
- TV image quality setting follows the *Visual Image Effect* setting in *TV Effect*.
  - A preview image for each mode appears during selection in *Image Display Mode* to check the effect.

## Backlight

Start Here ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Backlight ⇒ ●

### Set Backlight & Power Saving

- ⇒ Lighting ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● (⇒ Select time Backlight is lit ⇒ ●) ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter a time before the Power Saver Mode is activated)
- When the Power Saver Mode is activated, nothing appears in Standby. Pressing any key cancels the Power Saver Mode.

### Set Backlight during Charging

- ⇒ Charging ⇒ ● ⇒ Standard or All Time ON ⇒ ●



















# Clock, Display & Sounds

Set Brightness of Backlight	<p>⇒ <b>Brightness</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select a Level ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When set to <b>ON</b>, Display Backlight automatically adjusts to surrounding brightness; Key Backlight automatically switches on/off.</li> <li>• <b>Brightness</b> is <b>Level 4</b> by default. For maximum brightness, set to <b>Level 6</b>. Note that a higher setting will decrease battery time faster.</li> </ul>
-----------------------------	---

## Desktop Icons

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ●

Set Desktop Theme	<p>⇒ <b>Desktop Icon</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  to see details of the selected theme.</li> </ul>
Change Icon Design of a Theme	<p>⇒ <b>Desktop Icon</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>CHG Icon Image</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Select Icon Image</b> or <b>Default Icon Image</b> ⇒ ● (⇒ Set and icon)</p>
Change Order of Icons of a Theme	<p>⇒ <b>Desktop Icon</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Sort</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ●</p>

Copy Icons to Another Theme	<p>⇒ <b>Desktop Icon</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Copy</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Copy This, Copy Selected</b> or <b>Copy All</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒ ● (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ● ⇒ )</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <b>Copy Selected</b> or <b>Copy All</b> is selected, select <b>YES</b> and press ● at the end of the procedure.</li> </ul>
Move Icons to Another Theme	<p>⇒ <b>Desktop Icon</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Move</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Move This, Move Selected</b> or <b>Move All</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒ ● (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ● ⇒ ) ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Delete Icons of a Theme	<p>⇒ <b>Desktop Icon</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a theme ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Delete This, Delete selected</b> or <b>Delete All</b> ⇒ ● (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ● ⇒ ) ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Set New S! Mail/SMS Indicator in 3D	<p>⇒ <b>3D Display Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ ●</p>



## Menu Display Settings

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Display** → ● → **Menu Display Set** → ●

List View and Details View	<p>→ <b>Menu Display</b> → ● → <b>List</b> or <b>Detail</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select View for menus from  → <b>Settings</b> → ●.</li> </ul>
Set Main Menu Theme	<p>→ <b>Theme</b> → ● → Select a theme → ●</p> <p>(→ <b>YES</b> or <b>NO</b> → ●)</p>
Change Icon Design (Original Theme)	<p>→ <b>Theme</b> → ● → <b>Original Theme</b> → ●</p> <p>→ Select a menu item → ● → Set an image</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change Main Menu icons to any preferred image.</li> <li>Press  to check current setting.</li> </ul>
Change Background (Original Theme)	<p>→ <b>Theme</b> → ● → <b>Original Theme</b> → ●</p> <p>→ <b>Background Image</b> → ● → Set an image</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change Main Menu background to any preferred image.</li> <li>Press  to check current setting.</li> </ul>
Reset Original Theme Settings	<p>→ <b>Theme</b> → ● → <b>Original Theme</b> → ●</p> <p>→ Select a menu item →  → <b>Reset</b> or <b>All reset</b> → ● → <b>YES</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.</li> </ul>

Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory

→ **Memory Focus** → ● → **ON** → ●

Start Here →

Add a Menu Item to Original Menu

→ **<Not Recorded>** → → Select a function → ● (→ **YES** → ●)

Change Order of Original Menu Items

→ Select an item → → **Sort** → ● → Select a position → ●

Cancel Original Menu Items

→ Select an item → → **Release** or **Release All** → ● → **YES** → ●

Reset Original Menu

→ → **Reset Org. Menu** → ● → **YES** → ●

## Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector

→ **Settings** → ● → **Display** → ● → **Icons Setting** → ● → **ON** → ●

- The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing ● in Standby. Use to select an indicator and press ● to access the corresponding function.



## External Display (Indicator display)

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Indicator Display** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒

Notifications/ Animation	⇒ <b>Disp. Clock Only</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒  ⇒  • Select <b>OFF</b> to set notifications (incoming messages, etc.) and animation (alarm, etc.) to appear.
Set Clock Pattern	⇒ <b>Clock Type</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒  ⇒
Set Messages to Appear	⇒ <b>Called, Mail or Connection</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒  ⇒
Set Time Signal	⇒ <b>Time Signal</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Set Time</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>30 Minutes</b> or <b>60 Minutes</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Set Color</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a color ⇒  ⇒ <b>Set Pattern</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒  ⇒  (twice)
Set Viewable Time	⇒ <b>Display Time</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>15 Seconds, 30 Seconds</b> or <b>60 Seconds</b> ⇒  ⇒

## Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒

Adjust Ringtone Volume	⇒ <b>Ring Volume</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒  to adjust volume ⇒ • When <b>Step</b> is set, the ringtone volume increases every three seconds. When <b>Silent</b> is set, no ringtone sounds.
Set a Ringtone	⇒ <b>Select Ring Tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select Ring Tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  (⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ) ⇒ Set a ringtone
Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones	⇒ <b>Select Ring Tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Select Ring Tone</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Random Melody</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ • Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.
Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message	⇒ <b>Mail Ring Time</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Mail</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter ringing duration • When <b>OFF</b> is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.



Set Vibration*	<p>⇒ <b>Vibrator</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, handset vibration is linked to the set ringtone melody. Handset may not vibrate depending on the set ringtone.</li> </ul>
Set Illumination Color	<p>⇒ <b>Illumination</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Set Color</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●</p>
Set Illumination Pattern	<p>⇒ <b>Illumination</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Set Pattern</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, illumination pattern is linked to the set ringtone melody. Illumination may not flash depending on the set ringtone.</li> </ul>
Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	<p>⇒ <b>Illumination</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Missed Info</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	<p>⇒ <b>Select Ring Tone</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Phone, Video Call or Mail</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Select Calling Disp.</b> or <b>Select Receiving Disp.</b> ⇒ ● (⇒ <b>My Picture</b> or <b>Videos</b> ⇒ ●) ⇒ Set an image/video</p>

## Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/ Messages

⇒ **Disp. Phone Book Image** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

\* When *Vibrator* is not set to *OFF*, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.

## Answering Incoming Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ ●

### Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key

⇒ **Answer Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Any Key Answer** ⇒ ●

- Answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from and . The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.

### Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

⇒ **Answer Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Quick Silent** ⇒ ●

- Mute the ringtone by pressing a key from (for voice calls only), , or by opening handset.



## Manner Mode

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ ⇒ **Manner Mode Setting** ⇒

Set Manner Mode Type	⇒ <b>Manner Mode Set</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a Manner Mode ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>Super Silent</i> is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.</li> </ul>
Configure Original Manner Mode	⇒ <b>Manner Mode Set</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Original</b> ⇒  ⇒ Set each item ⇒
Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start	⇒ <b>Manner Start Time</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Start Time Set1</b> or <b>Start Time Set2</b> ⇒  ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Enter time ⇒  ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ <b>1 Time, Daily (D)</b> or <b>Select Day (W)</b> ⇒  ⇒ (Select day ⇒ ) ⇒
Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release	⇒ <b>Manner Release Time</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>Release Time Set1</b> or <b>Release Time Set2</b> ⇒  ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Enter time ⇒  ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ <b>1 Time, Daily (D)</b> or <b>Select Day (W)</b> ⇒  ⇒ (Select day ⇒ ) ⇒
Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off	⇒ <b>Manner Start Time</b> or <b>Manner Release Time</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to toggle on/off. Settings (e.g., time) are not updated.</li> <li>To cancel all settings at once: ⇒  ⇒ <b>Release All</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ </li> </ul>

## Checking Call Logs

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒

Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When  Pressed)	⇒ <b>Info Notice Setting</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two short beeps sound twice when there are missed calls, and three short beeps sound when there are none.</li> </ul>
Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows	⇒ <b>Disp. Call/Receive No.</b> ⇒  ⇒ Select a color ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to toggle the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.</li> <li>To reset the color settings, press .</li> </ul>

## Sounds

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒

Set Key Sound Off	⇒ <b>Keypad Sound</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒
Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones	⇒ <b>Charge Sound</b> ⇒  ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒



Set Handset Open/Close Sound	<p>⇒ <i>Open-close Sound</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Open Sound</i> or <i>Close Sound</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Melody*</i></p> <p>⇒ ● ⇒ Select a tone ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Ring Time</i></p> <p>⇒ ● ⇒ Select a setting ⇒ ●</p> <p>* Select <i>OFF</i> to set the tone off.</p>
------------------------------	---

Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Voice Announce** ⇒ ●

Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message	<p>⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ● ⇒</p> <p>Record sound (for about 15 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press ● to stop recording.</li> </ul>
Play Recorded Sound	<p>⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒ ●</p>
Delete Recorded Sound	<p>⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒  ⇒ <b>Erase</b></p> <p>⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>

## Earphone-Microphone

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ●

Audio Output	<p>⇒ <i>External Connection</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Headset Usage Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Headset+speaker</i> or <i>Headset Only</i> ⇒ ●</p>
Microphone Setting	<p>⇒ <i>External Connection</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Headset Mic. Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Built-in Microphone</i> or <i>Headset Microphone</i> ⇒ ●</p>

Answer Calls Automatically	<p>⇒ <i>External Connection</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Auto Answer Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Phone</i> or <i>Video Call</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ring time</p>
Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone	<p>⇒ <i>Dialing</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Headset SW to Dial</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Voice Call</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ●</p>



## Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-21) → Select a search method →  → OK → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel the preferred search method, press  in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with ★, and then press .</li> </ul>
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] (P. 2-21) →  → <b>Group Setting</b> → ● → Select a group → ● → Edit group name → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name remains the same only for <i>No Group</i>.</li> </ul>
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	→ <b>Tools</b> → ● → <b>Forwarding Image</b> → ● → OFF → ●

Set Auto Synchronize Off	→ <b>Auto Sync Settings</b> → ● → ON/OFF → ● → OFF → ●
Check Auto Synchronize Settings	→ <b>Auto Sync Settings</b> → ● → Confirm Settings → ●

## Outgoing Calls

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Dialing** → ●

Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers	→ <b>Prefix Setting</b> → ● → Select an item →  → Enter name → ● → Enter prefix numbers → ●
Save Touch Tones	→ <b>Pause Dial</b> → ● →  → Enter touch tone numbers → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold  to enter "p" (Pause).</li> </ul>
Set Numbers after "*" as Sub Address	→ <b>Sub-address Setting</b> → ● → ON → ●

## S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here → **Tools** → ● → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → ●

Set Auto Synchronize	→ <b>Auto Sync Settings</b> → ● → ON/OFF → ● → ON → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → Select synchronize timing → ● (→ Set synchronize cycle and day) → Select synchronize type → ● → YES → ● (twice)
----------------------	---



## International Calls

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Dialing** → ● → **Int'l Dial Assistance** → ●

Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"	<p>→ <b>Auto Int'l Call Set.</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> → ●</p> <p>→ Select a country code → ● → Select an international access code → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When <b>OFF</b> is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold .</li> <li>• Select an international access code you set in <b>IDD Prefix Setting</b>.</li> </ul>
Change a Country Code	<p>→ <b>Country Code Setting</b> → ● → Select an item →  → Enter country name → ● → Enter country code → ●</p>
Save an International Access Code	<p>→ <b>IDD Prefix Setting</b> → ● → Select an item →  → Enter international access name → ● → Enter international access code → ●</p>

## Call Settings

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Talk** → ●

Set Reconnection Tone	<p>→ <b>Reconnect Signal</b> → ● → <b>High Tone</b> or <b>Low Tone</b> → ●</p>
-----------------------	--

Set Noise Reduction	<p>→ <b>Noise Reduction</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> → ●</p>
Set Weak Signal Alarm	<p>→ <b>Quality Alarm</b> → ● → <b>High Tone</b> or <b>Low Tone</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alarm may not sound before call is disconnected, if signal strength drops suddenly.</li> </ul>
Set Clarity of Other Party Voice	<p>→ <b>Hyper Clear Voice</b> → ● → <b>High, Low</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●</p>
Automatically Record During Voice Call	<p>→ <b>Auto Voice Memo</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Record latest 60 seconds of call (two recordings).</li> </ul>
Change Color of Illumination While Calling	<p>→ <b>Illumination in Talk</b> → ● → Select a pattern → ●</p>
Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold	<p>→ <b>Set Hold Tone</b> → ● → <b>On Hold Tone</b> → ● → Select a hold tone → ● (→ ●)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select a hold tone and press  to check guidance message.</li> </ul>
Set Closing Sound Off	<p>→ <b>Setting When Folded</b> → ● → <b>No Tone</b> → ●</p>
End Call By Closing Handset	<p>→ <b>Setting When Folded</b> → ● → <b>End the Call</b> → ●</p>





## Call Costs

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Call Time/Charge** →

<b>Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost</b>	<p>→ <b>Auto Reset Total Cost</b> →  → Enter Security Code →  → <b>Auto Reset</b> →  → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> →  (→ Enter PIN2 → )</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <b>ON</b> is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.</li> </ul>
<b>Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit*</b>	<p>→ <b>Set Max Cost Limit</b> →  → Enter Security Code →  →  →  → Enter cost limit →  →  →  → <b>ON</b> →  →  →  → Set alarm tone →  →  → to adjust volume →  →  → </p> <p>Enter PIN2 → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A call ends automatically and  appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit.</li> <li>When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0: → <b>Set Max Cost Limit</b> →  → Enter Security Code →  →  →  (twice) →  → Enter PIN2 → </li> </ul>

\* Cost display may not be available depending on your subscription. If unavailable, you will also be unable to set a cost limit.

## Video Calls

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Video Call** →

<b>Set Outgoing Image for Video Calls</b>	<p>→ <b>Select Image</b> →  → Select an item →  → <b>Pre-installed</b> or <b>Original</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set an image other than the preinstalled image: → <b>Original</b> →  → <b>Change Setting</b> →  → Set an image • Press  to check image.</li> </ul>
<b>Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails</b>	<p>→ <b>Auto Redial as Voice</b> →  → <b>ON</b> → </p>
<b>Set an Image to Appear in Main Window</b>	<p>→ <b>Display Setting</b> →  → <b>Main Display</b> →  → <b>Other Side</b> or <b>My Side</b> → </p>
<b>Reverse Front Camera Image</b>	<p>→ <b>Display Setting</b> →  → <b>Front Camera Reverse</b> →  → <b>ON</b> → </p>
<b>Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls</b>	<p>→ <b>Hands-free Switch</b> →  → <b>ON</b> → </p>



## Global Roaming

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Int'l Roaming Set** ⇒ ●

Show Operator Name While Roaming

⇒ **Display Operator Name** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display ON** ⇒ ●

<p><b>Set Operator</b></p>	<p>⇒ <b>NW Search Mode</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Manual</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>Auto</i> is set, an available operator is set automatically.</li> <li>Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Search Available Operator</b></p>	<p>⇒ <b>NW Search Mode</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Network Re-search</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when <i>NW Search Mode</i> is set to <i>Manual</i>.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Set Priority for Operators</b></p>	<p>⇒ <b>PLMN Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒  ⇒ <b>Change Priority</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select a position on the priority list ⇒ ● ⇒  ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When <i>Auto</i> is set under <i>NW Search Mode</i>, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Change Network</b></p>	<p>⇒ <b>Select Network</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>AUTO, 3G or GSM/GPRS</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set to <i>AUTO</i> or network used in current location.</li> </ul>



## Header/Signature Settings

Start Here for S! Mail → **Mail Setting** → ●

Start Here for PC Mail → → **PC Mail Settings** → ●

### Edit Header/Signature

→ **Header/Signature** → ● → **Edit Header** or **Edit Signature** → ● (twice) → Edit header/signature →

- Save *Header/Signature* for both S! Mail and PC Mail.

### Insert Header/Signature Automatically

→ **Header/Signature** → ● → **Insert Setting** → ● → Check item(s) → ● →

- Set Insert settings for both S! Mail and PC Mail and the respective header/signature is automatically inserted. However, when you switch from S! Mail Composition window to PC Mail Composition window, S! Mail header/signature remains (PC Mail header/signature is not inserted).

## S! Mail Settings

Start Here → **Mail Setting** → ● → **S! Mail Settings** → ●

### Request Delivery Report

→ **Delivery Report** → ● → **ON** → ●

- Delivery Report arrives when recipient has received your S! Mail. *S! Mail Report* appears in Subject field of Delivery Report.

### Set Default Mail Size

→ **Compose Mail Size** → ● → **300KB** or **2MB** → ●

- If set to **300KB**, a confirmation appears when message size exceeds 300 KB.

## SMS Settings

Start Here → **Mail Setting** → ● → **SMS Settings** → ●

### Request Delivery Report

→ **SMS Report Request** → ● → **ON** → ●

- Delivery Report arrives when recipient has received your SMS message. *SMS Report* appears in Subject field of Delivery Report.

### Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages

→ **SMS Validity Period** → ● → Select a period → ●

- When *None* is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.



Set SMS Input Language	⇒ <i>SMS Input Character</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Japanese (70char.)</i> or <i>English(160char.)</i> ⇒ ●
------------------------	--

## PC Mail Setting

Set Default Account	☑ ⇒ ▼ ⇒ <i>PC Mail Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Send/Recv. Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Outgoing Account</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an account ⇒ ●
---------------------	--

## Incoming Message Settings

Start Here for S! Mail ☑ ⇒ *Mail Setting* ⇒ ●

Start Here for PC Mail ☑ ⇒ ▼ ⇒ *PC Mail Settings* ⇒ ●

Do Not Show Emotion Indicators	⇒ <i>Emotion/Keyword</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Uncheck <i>Disp. Emotion</i> ⇒ ☑
Show Keyword Indicators	⇒ <i>Emotion/Keyword</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Put a checkmark to <i>Disp. Keyword</i> ⇒ Select a keyword entry field ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ ☑ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator ① - ③ appears.</li> <li>In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-10) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.</li> </ul>

Delete Keywords	⇒ <i>Emotion/Keyword</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a keyword ⇒ ☑ ⇒ <i>Delete Keyword</i> or <i>Delete All Keyword</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ ☑ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To delete all keywords, uncheck <i>Disp. Keyword</i>.</li> </ul>
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	⇒ <i>Receiving Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Alarm Preferred</i> or <i>Operation Preferred</i> ⇒ ●

## Incoming S! Mail Messages

Start Here ☑ ⇒ *Mail Setting* ⇒ ●

Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages	⇒ <i>Read Out Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Read Out Received Mail</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.</li> </ul>
Set Voice to Read Out Messages	⇒ <i>Read Out Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Select Voice</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a voice type ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.</li> </ul>
Set Mail Retrieval Method	⇒ <i>S! Mail Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Auto Receiving</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Manual, Auto(300KB)</i> or <i>Auto(1MB)</i> ⇒ ●



<b>Restrict Incoming S! Mail Size</b>	<p>⇒ <b>S! Mail Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Receiving Size</b>          ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>300KB</b> or <b>2MB</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When set to <b>300KB</b>, messages are resized to 300 KB. Attachments may be resized or deleted on the server. Once resized, messages cannot be retrieved again at original size.</li> </ul>
---------------------------------------	--

## Incoming PC Mail Messages

Start Here ⇒ ⇒ **PC Mail Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒  
**Send/Recv. Settings** ⇒ ●

<b>Set New Message Retrieval Method</b>	<p>⇒ <b>Auto Check</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Auto</b> or <b>Manual</b>          ⇒ ● (⇒ ●)</p>
<b>Retrieve Notification Only or Full Message</b>	<p>⇒ <b>Auto Receiving</b> or <b>Manual Receiving</b> ⇒ ●          ⇒ <b>Part</b> or <b>All</b> ⇒ ●</p>
<b>Set Interval for New Message Retrieval</b>	<p>⇒ <b>Check Interval</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>30 Minutes, 1 Hour, 2 Hours, 4 Hours, 8 Hours</b> or <b>24 Hours</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when <b>Auto Check</b> is set to <b>Auto</b>.</li> <li>Battery life is also shortened when a short check interval is set.</li> <li>Messages are checked at intervals based on the time at which setting was performed. Even if you change the time indicated by handset Clock, the time at which <b>Check Interval</b> was set is used as the basis.</li> </ul>

<b>Set New Message Retrieval Off During Set Hours</b>	<p>⇒ <b>Inactivate Time</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when <b>Auto Check</b> is set to <b>Auto</b>.</li> <li>If inactive time is set to 24 hours, messages are no longer automatically received.</li> <li>Messages may not be automatically received depending on the combination of <b>Check Interval</b> and <b>Inactivate Time</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>New Message Retrieval While Abroad</b>	<p>⇒ <b>Auto Check in Roaming</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when <b>Auto Check</b> is set to <b>Auto</b>.</li> </ul>

## Reply Settings

Start Here for S! Mail ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ●

Start Here for PC Mail ⇒ ⇒ **PC Mail Settings** ⇒ ●

<b>Quote Message Marks</b>	<p>⇒ <b>Header/Signature</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Edit Quotation Marks</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit quotation mark ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set quote message marks for both S! Mail and PC Mail.</li> </ul>
----------------------------	--



## Message Window/Messaging Settings

Start Here for S! Mail  ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ●

Start Here for PC Mail  ⇒  ⇒ **PC Mail Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Default Mail Menu	⇒ <b>Priority Mail Menu</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>S! Mail Menu</b> or <b>PC Mail Menu</b> ⇒ ●
Set Message List View	⇒ <b>Mail List Disp.</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>2 Lines, 1 Line</b> or <b>1 Line+Body</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Subject, Name</b> or <b>Address</b> ⇒ ●
Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments	⇒ <b>Start Attachment(auto)</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ ● • Automatic play only for received mail.
Set Scroll Unit	⇒ <b>Scroll</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>1 Line, 3 Lines</b> or <b>5 Lines</b> ⇒ ●
Set Font Size	⇒ <b>Font Size</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●
Check Mail Settings	⇒ <b>Check Mail Settings</b> or <b>Check PC Mail Settings</b> ⇒ ●
Restore to Default Settings	⇒ <b>Reset Mail Settings</b> or <b>Reset PC Mail Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●

## SMS Server Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Connection Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **SMS Center Selection** ⇒ ●

Change SMS Center Address	⇒ <b>819066519300</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter SMS Center address ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>International</b> or <b>Unknown</b> ⇒ ● • Address is 819066519300 by default. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	⇒ <b>Reset</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●

## PC Mail Account Settings

Start Here  ⇒  ⇒ **PC Mail Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Account Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an account ⇒ ●

Edit Account Name	⇒ <b>Edit Account name</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit account name ⇒ ●
Reset PC Mail Account Settings	⇒ <b>Reset Account Settings</b> ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●



## Internet

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold → **Browser Settings** → ●

Start Here for PC Site Browser Press and hold → **PC Site Browser** → ● → **PC Site Brw. Settings** → ●

Set Scroll Unit/Speed	→ <i>Scroll</i> → ● → <i>Whole Page, Half Page or Single Line</i> → ●
Enable/Disable Image Download	→ <i>Downloads</i> → ● → <i>Display Images</i> → ● → <i>ON or OFF</i> → ●
Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments	→ <i>Downloads</i> → ● → <i>Play Sounds</i> → ● → <i>ON or OFF</i> → ●
Clear Cache	→ <i>Memory Manager</i> → ● → <i>Delete Cache</i> → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●
Delete Cookies	→ <i>Memory Manager</i> → ● → <i>Delete Cookies</i> → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●
Initialize Memory Status of Internet	→ <i>Initialized Browser</i> → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Manufacture Number</i> → ● → <i>ON or OFF</i> → ●

Set Whether to Send Referer	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Send Referer</i> → ● → <i>ON or OFF</i> → ●
Enable/Disable Cookies	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Cookie Settings</i> → ● → Select an option → ●
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Script Settings</i> → ● → Select an option → ●
Check Internet Settings	→ <i>Check Settings</i> or <i>Check PC Site Brw. Set</i> → ●
Reset Internet Settings	→ <i>Reset</i> or <i>Reset PC Site Brw. Set</i> → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●

## Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here Press and hold → **Browser Settings** → ●

Set Font Size	→ <i>Font Size</i> → ● → Select a size → ●
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	→ <i>Flash Sound Effect</i> → ● → <i>ON or OFF</i> → ●



## PC Site Browser

**Start Here** Press and hold  ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ● ⇒  
**PC Site Brw. Settings** ⇒ ●

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	⇒ <i>Warning Messages</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●
Set Page Layout	⇒ <i>Display Mode Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>PC Screen</i> or <i>Small Screen</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●





## Channel List

Start Here → TV → ● → Channel List → ●

Change Title of Channel List	→ Select a channel list →  → Edit Title → ● → Edit title → ●
Delete a Channel List	→ Select a channel list →  → Delete This → ● → YES → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.</li> </ul>
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	→ Select a channel list →  →  → Remote Control No. → ● → Select a remote control number → ● → Select a channel → ● → Repeat the same step →  → YES → ●
Delete a Channel	→ Select a channel list →  → Select a channel →  → Delete This → ● → YES → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete a channel from any channel list except for the currently used list.</li> </ul>

## Image & Sound

Start Here → TV → ● → User Settings → ●

Set Subtitle Display	→ Subtitles → ● → ON (Wide:Bottom), ON (Wide:Top) or OFF → ●
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	→ Icon Always Show → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Save Battery by Dimming Backlight	→ TV Power Saving → ● → YES → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Following these steps when TV Power Saving is on will cancel TV Power Saving.</li> </ul>
Set Sound On While Handset Closed	→ TV Sound While Closed → ● → ON → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When set to ON and handset is closed, a page connected from data broadcast automatically updates. Packet transmission fees apply.</li> </ul>
Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV	→ Display Light → ● → Constant Light → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light.</li> </ul>
Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV	→ Display Light → ● → Lighting Duration → ● → Enter lighting time <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light.</li> </ul>
Set Sound Effects	→ TV Effect → ● → Sound Effect → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TV Power Saving must be off to set TV Effect.</li> </ul>



Set Visual Image Effects	<p>⇒ <b>TV Effect</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Visual Image Effect</b></p> <p>⇒ ● ⇒ Select an effect ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>TV Power Saving</i> must be off to set <i>TV Effect</i>.</li> </ul>
Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)	<p>⇒ <b>Time Shift Setup</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Auto ON</b> or <b>Auto OFF</b> ⇒ ●</p>

## Data Broadcasts

Start Here ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Data BC Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts	<p>⇒ <b>Set Image Disp.</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts	<p>⇒ <b>Sound Effect</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Show Confirmation Window Again	<p>⇒ <b>Reset Disp. Set.</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Once you select <b>YES</b>(By default) in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear.</li> </ul>

## Recording Programs

Continue/End Recording at Low Battery	<p> ⇒ <b>TV</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>User Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Rec. While Low Battery</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●</p>
---------------------------------------	--

## Other Settings

Start Here ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ ●

Check TV Settings	<p>⇒ <b>Check TV Settings</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Reset Channel Settings	<p>⇒ <b>Reset Channel Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Clear Data Broadcast Memory	<p>⇒ <b>Reset Storage Area</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an affiliated station ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete This</b> or <b>Delete All</b> ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ●) ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Reset TV Settings	<p>⇒ <b>Reset TV Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>



## Camera/Video Settings

Set Shutter Sound	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) →  → <b>Shutter Sound</b> → ● → Select a shutter sound → ●
Set Level of Smile for Smile Mode	[Smile Mode Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) →  → <b>Camera Settings</b> → ● → <b>Smile Level</b> → ● → Select a level → ●
Set Display for Landscape View Shooting	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) →  → <b>Icon Always Show</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Below icons do not appear if set to <b>OFF</b>. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Photo Viewfinder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Focus Frame, Auto Timer, Storage Capacity</li> </ul> </li> <li>● For Video Viewfinder or Shooting window <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto Timer, Storage Capacity, Recording Status, Recording Time (remaining)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Set Interval for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) →  → <b>Interval/Number</b> → ● → <b>Shot Interval</b> → ● → <b>0.5 Seconds</b> , <b>1.0 Seconds</b> or <b>2.0 Seconds</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Shot Interval</b> is available when <b>CHG Camera-mode</b> (P. 7-6) is set to <b>A-Continuous Mode</b>.</li> </ul>

Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) →  → <b>Interval/Number</b> → ● → <b>Shot Number</b> → ● → Enter Shot Number → ●
---	---

## File Storage

Set Storage Location for Still Images/Videos	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) →  → <b>Select to Save</b> → ● → <b>Phone</b> or <b>microSD</b> → ● → Select a folder → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To save videos on memory card, select a folder of Inbox.</li> </ul>
--	---



## Playback Window

Change Design of Playback Window	[Music Playback] window (P. 9-5) →  → <b>Action Setting</b> → ● → <b>Change Skin</b> → ● → Select a design → ●
Set Image Display Size	[Video Playback] window (P. 9-5) →  → <b>Action Setting</b> → ● → <b>Set Image Disp.</b> → ● → <b>Normal</b> or <b>Fit in Display</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when playing in Normal Screen mode.</li> </ul>

## When Running S! Appli

Start Here → **S! Appli** → ● → **Settings** → ●

Set Sound Volume	→ <b>Sound/Vib Settings</b> → ● → <b>Volume</b> → ● →  to adjust volume → ●
Set Vibration	→ <b>Sound/Vib Settings</b> → ● → <b>Vibration</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●
Set Backlight	→ <b>Backlight Settings</b> → ● → <b>Switch ON/OFF</b> → ● → <b>Always ON, Always OFF</b> or <b>Link To Phone Set.</b> → ●
Set Blinking of Backlight	→ <b>Backlight Settings</b> → ● → <b>Blink</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●

Start Here → **S! Appli** → ● → **S! Appli List** → ●

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network	→ Select an S! Appli →  → <b>Security Settings</b> → ● → <b>Net Access</b> → ● → <b>All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time</b> or <b>Disable</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available with network-capable S! Appli.</li> </ul>
Allow S! Appli to Read User Data	→ Select an S! Appli →  → <b>Security Settings</b> → ● → <b>Read User Data</b> → ● → <b>All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time</b> or <b>Disable</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available with S! Appli that can read user data.</li> </ul>
Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	→ Select an S! Appli →  → <b>Security Settings</b> → ● → <b>Write/Del User Data</b> → ● → <b>All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time</b> or <b>Disable</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available with S! Appli that can write and delete user data.</li> </ul>
Allow S! Appli to Obtain Location Information	→ Select an S! Appli →  → <b>Security Settings</b> → ● → <b>Location Info</b> → ● → <b>Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time</b> or <b>Disable</b> → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available with S! Appli that can use location information.</li> </ul>
Reset Security Settings of S! Appli	→ Select an S! Appli →  → <b>Security Settings</b> → ● → <b>Reset Security Set.</b> → ● → <b>YES</b> → ●



## S! Appli

Start Here  ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ●

Reset S! Appli  
Settings

⇒ **Reset** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Set to Default** ⇒ ● ⇒  
Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●

Delete All S! Appli

⇒ **Reset** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Delete All S! App** ⇒ ●  
⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●  
• Some S! Appli are not deleted.



## Mobile Widget

Start Here  ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Mobile Widget**  
⇒ ● ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ●

Check Auto Synchronize Settings	⇒ <b>Auto Refresh</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●
Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad	⇒ <b>Auto Roaming</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●
Delete All Widgets from Desktop Page	⇒ <b>Delete Content</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a Desktop page ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●
Set Whether to Use Cookies	⇒ <b>Cookies</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●
Delete Cookies	⇒ <b>Delete Cookies</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●
Set Widgets On/Off	⇒ <b>Standby Disp. Set.</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●

## S! Quick News

Start Here  ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ● ⇒ **S! Quick News**  
⇒ ● ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News	⇒ <b>Auto Refresh</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Select update interval, <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ● (twice)
Hide S! Quick News in Standby	⇒ <b>Standby Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Standby Disp. Set.</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ● (twice)
Set Ticker Speed	⇒ <b>Standby Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Speed Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Fast, Normal</b> or <b>Slow</b> ⇒ ● (twice)
Set Information to appear in S! Quick News	⇒ <b>Standby Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Unread &amp; Read Set.</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Unread Only</b> or <b>Unread &amp; Read</b> ⇒ ● (twice)
Hide S! Quick News Images	⇒ <b>Set Image Disp.</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ● (twice)
Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents	⇒ <b>Del. Quick News</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ● (twice) ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● (three times)



## S! Info Channel

Start Here  → **Entertainment** → ● → **S! Info**  
**Ch./Weather** → ● → **Settings** → ●

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	→ <b>S! Information Notif.</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●
Set Font Size for Web Pages	→ <b>Font Size</b> → ● → Select font size → ●

## Weather Indicators

Start Here  → **Entertainment** → ● →  
**S! Info Ch./Weather** → ● → **Weather**  
**Indicator** → ● → **Settings** → ●

Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information	→ <b>Weather Update</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ● (→ <b>YES</b> → ●)
Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby	→ <b>Standby Setting</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

→ **Weather Notif.** → ● → **ON** or **OFF** → ●



## Text Entry

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●  
⇒ **Character Input Set** ⇒ ●

Set Text Input Method	⇒ <b>Input Mode</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an input method ⇒ ●
Set Word Prediction	⇒ <b>Prediction</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●
Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana	⇒ <b>T9 Change Mode</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>T9 Kanji Change Mode</b> or <b>T9 Kana Change Mode</b> ⇒ ●
Clear Learning History	⇒ <b>Clear Learned</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>T9/Expect Words/Pic.</b> or <b>Kana/Kanji Change/Face</b> ⇒ ●
Change Font Size	⇒ <b>CHG Input Size</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●
Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode	⇒ <b>Auto Cursor</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Fast, Normal, Slow</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●

## Shortcut Key

Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Shortcut-key Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒  
Select a function ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●  
• To return to original settings, press , select **Reset Shortcut-key**, and press ●.

## Closed Illumination

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Illumination** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Closed Illum.** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

Set Flashing Color for Handset Close	⇒ <b>Set Color</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●
Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close	⇒ <b>Set Pattern</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●





# Other Settings

## Key Illumination

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Illumination** → ● → **Key Illumination** → ● → **ON** → ●

Set Illumination for Power On/Off	→ <b>Power ON</b> or <b>Power OFF</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●
Set Illumination for Incoming or Outgoing Calls	→ <b>Incoming Call</b> or <b>Dialing</b> → ● → Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Call Start	→ <b>Talking Start</b> → ● → Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Sending/Receiving Messages	→ <b>Mail Receiving</b> or <b>Mail Sending</b> → ● → Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail	→ <b>Emotion</b> → ● → <b>Always, Unread Mail Only</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●
Set Illumination for Alarm Notification	→ <b>Alarm</b> → ● → Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Snooze Notification	→ <b>Snooze</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●

Set Illumination for Ir/IC Transmission	→ <b>Ir/IC Exchanging</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●
Set Illumination for Missed Call or New Message	→ <b>Missed Call</b> → ● → Set a pattern
Set Illumination for When Handset Opens	→ <b>Open</b> → ● → Set a pattern
Set Illumination for Special Events	→ <b>Event</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●

## Key Backlight

Set Key Backlight Color	→ <b>Settings</b> → ● → <b>Illumination</b> → ● → <b>Key Backlight</b> → ● → Select a color → ●
-------------------------	---

## Osaifu-Keitai®

Set Illumination for IC Card	→ <b>Tools</b> → ● → <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> → ● → <b>IC Card Illumination</b> → ● → <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> → ●
------------------------------	---



Delete all Lifestyle-Appli	⇒ <b>S! Appli</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Reset</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Delete All LifeApp</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ● • Some Lifestyle-Appli are not deleted.
Set Whether to Enable Opening from Reader/Writer	⇒ <b>Tools</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Osaifu-Keitai</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Interface Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Browser</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●

## S! GPS Navi

Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **S! GPS Navi** ⇒ ● ⇒ **NAVI Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Default Navi Appli	⇒ <b>Map Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Select Navi Appli</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a Navi Appli ⇒ ●
Begin Positioning Before/After Activating Map	⇒ <b>Map Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Map Activate Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>After Positioning</b> or <b>Before Positioning</b> ⇒ ●
Save Map URL	⇒ <b>Map URL Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>&lt;Not Recorded&gt;</b> ⇒  ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Map URL Name</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter URL name ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Map URL</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter URL ⇒ ● ⇒

Edit URL Name	⇒ <b>Map URL Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a map URL ⇒  ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ Select name ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ● ⇒ Select URL ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit URL ⇒ ● ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The map URL set by default cannot be edited.</li> </ul>
Delete Map URL	⇒ <b>Map URL Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a map URL ⇒  ⇒ <b>Delete</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The map URL set by default cannot be deleted.</li> </ul>
Set Map URL	⇒ <b>Map URL Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a map URL ⇒ ●
Set Location Information Send Method	⇒ <b>Send Location Info</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Confirm, Send</b> or <b>Not Send</b> ⇒ ●

## Bluetooth®

Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Bluetooth** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Bluetooth Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Detection Time for Device	⇒ <b>Time-out to Search</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter search time
-------------------------------	---



## Other Settings

Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device	<p>⇒ <b>Forward Ring Tone</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> or <b>OFF</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ring tone will also sound from handset if <i>Headset Usage Setting</i> is set to <i>Headset+speaker</i> and <i>Forward Ring Tone</i> is set to <i>OFF</i>.</li> </ul>
Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device	<p>⇒ <b>Dial From Other Device</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Valid</b> or <b>Invalid</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Check Handset Bluetooth® Information	<p>⇒ <b>Bluetooth Info</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to change name of added device.</li> </ul>

## Wi-Fi

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Wi-Fi Setting** ⇒ ●

Show Confirmation Before Switching to 3G	<p>⇒ <b>Wi-Fi/3G Change Set</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Confirm Mode</b> or <b>Auto Mode</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unavailable when <i>ON/OFF</i> is set to <i>OFF</i>.</li> </ul>
Reset Wi-Fi Setting	<p>⇒ <b>Reset Wi-Fi Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Wi-Fi Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Manual Setup** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Profile Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Select a profile** ⇒ ●

Change Profile Name*	<p>⇒ <b>Set Profile Name</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter profile name ⇒ ● ⇒  (twice)</p>
Set ESSID*	<p>⇒ <b>Wi-Fi Detail Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ESSID Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ESSID ⇒ ● ⇒  (three times)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESSID is an ID for preventing unintended network crossing. Specify the same setting as for the access point.</li> </ul>
Select Wireless Mode Setting*	<p>⇒ <b>Wi-Fi Detail Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Radio Mode Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Auto(802.11b/g)</b> or <b>802.11b</b> ⇒ ● ⇒  (three times)</p>
Set IP Address*	<p>⇒ <b>IP Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>IP Address Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Automatic Setup</b> or <b>Manual Setup</b> ⇒ ● ( ⇒ <b>IP Address</b>, <b>Subnet Mask</b> and <b>Default Gateway</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter setting values ⇒ ●) ⇒  (three times)</p>
Set DNS Server*	<p>⇒ <b>IP Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>DNS Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Automatic Setup</b> or <b>Manual Setup</b> ⇒ ● ( ⇒ <b>Primary DNS</b> and <b>Secondary DNS</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter setting values ⇒ ● ⇒  (three times)</p>



Use HTTP Proxy Server*	<p>⇒ <b>HTTP Proxy Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ <b>Server Address, Port Number(HTTP), Port Number(SSL) and Unset Proxy Address</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter setting values ⇒ ● ⇒ [OK] (three times)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available when <i>Wi-Fi Access Mode</i> is set to <i>Direct Access</i>.</li> </ul>
Set Security Method*	<p>⇒ <b>Set Security Method</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>None, WEP, WPA/WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>( ⇒ Enter or select setting values ⇒ ●)</p> <p>⇒ [OK] (twice)</p>
Set to Use Public Wireless LAN*	<p>⇒ <b>Public Wi-Fi Setting</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>ON</b> ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ <b>ID and Password</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ID and password ⇒ ● ⇒ [OK] (three times)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using a profile other than <i>BB モバイルポイント</i>, ID and password entry may be required even if an ID and password are already set.</li> <li>Does not guarantee connection to all public wireless LAN services.</li> </ul>
Set Access Mode*	<p>⇒ <b>Wi-Fi Access Mode</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>Keitai Wi-Fi or Direct Access</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ [OK] (twice)</p>

\* After setting, in Manual Setup window (P. 13-13), press [OK] (Finish).

## Resetting Handset

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●

Reset All Settings to Default	<p>⇒ <b>Reset Settings</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p>
Initialize Handset to Default Status	<p>⇒ <b>Initialize</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ● ⇒ <b>YES</b> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts.</li> <li>When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored.</li> <li>Your Security Code will also be reset to default.</li> </ul>



# Appendix



<b>Multitask Combinations</b> .....	<b>15-2</b>
<b>Software Update</b> .....	<b>15-4</b>
Updating Software.....	15-4
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>15-6</b>
<b>Text Entry Key Assignments</b> .....	<b>15-11</b>
In 5-touch Mode .....	15-11
In 2-touch Mode .....	15-12
In T9 Input Mode.....	15-13
<b>Kuten Code List</b> .....	<b>15-14</b>
<b>Weather Indicators</b> .....	<b>15-20</b>
<b>Menu List</b> .....	<b>15-21</b>
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>15-42</b>
Main Specifications .....	15-42
Handset Materials .....	15-43
Maximum Number of Storable Items.....	15-44
Memory Card Folders & Files .....	15-45
<b>Index</b> .....	<b>15-47</b>
<b>Warranty &amp; After Sales Service</b> .....	<b>15-60</b>
Warranty.....	15-60
After Sales Service .....	15-60
<b>Customer Service</b> .....	<b>15-61</b>

# 15



# Multitask Combinations

The following table shows combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously to multitask.

● The following indications may not apply depending on the function status and combination.

Function Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo!	S! Appli	Settings/ Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group
Mail	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Mail Group
Yahoo!	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Yahoo! Group
S! Appli	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	S! Appli Group
Settings/Optional Services	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Settings Group
Data Folder	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Data Folder
Tools	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Tools Group
Phone Book	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Own Data	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	



Function Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo!	S! Appli	Settings/ Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group	
TV 	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	TV & Music Group
Music 	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	
During a Voice Call 	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	Voice Call	
During a Video Call 	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	Video Call	
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected 	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	External Connection

○ : Can be activated.

× : Cannot be activated.





# Software Update

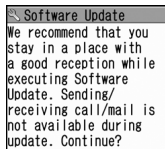
Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended.
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check or update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. Wait for the software update to finish before using handset.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Other handset functions are available once the software update is completed.
- Data saved on handset is retained when you update software. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.

- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-61).

## Updating Software

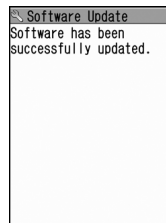
- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒
- 2 **Software Update** ⇒



- 3 Follow onscreen instructions

## After Software is Updated

After update, handset restarts and update status appears.







Update Status

### Note


- If handset does not restart after updating, remove and reinsert Battery, and turn handset on again. If handset still does not restart, call Softbank Mobile Customer Center (P. 15-61).



## Checking Update Results

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒ 
- 2 **Update Result** ⇒ 

## Using Regular Updates

A confirmation for software update appears at the scheduled time. Press  or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).



# Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-13
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-21
Handset is slow to turn on.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g., Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-13
	Is AC Charger plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-15
	Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	
	Is AC Charger the specified ZTDAA1? Battery may not charge properly with non-specified charger.	
Battery drains too fast.	Battery service life may be over. Battery lifespan may be shortened by environmental factors.	P. 1-13, P. 14-5
	Battery operation time will vary depending on handset operations or settings.	
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 14-14

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is <i>Dial/Sending Mail</i> specified to be locked in Original (Dial) Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is <i>Restrict Dialing</i> set?	P. 2-23
A message informs you the number is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-
Busy tone always sounds for outgoing call.	Does <i>Network is busy at this moment Please try again later</i> appear in Display?	-
<i>Network is busy at this moment Please try again later</i> appears.	Voice call/packet transmission network may be experiencing heavy traffic or technical difficulties. Try again later. Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are still available.	-
Cannot receive Calls. Incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in <i>Emission OFF Mode</i> ?	P. 4-6
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-19
	Is <i>Ring Volume</i> set to <i>Silent</i> ?	P. 14-8




Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The other party's voice is difficult to hear.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
The other party's voice is too loud.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
Handset response to key presses is slow.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is <b>Keypad Sound</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 14-10
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-19
Side Key is inoperable when handset is closed.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is <b>Side Key Guard</b> set to <b>ON</b> ?	P. 1-23

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Display is blank.	Is Power Saver Mode activated?	P. 14-5
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35 °C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is <b>Brightness</b> under <b>Backlight</b> set to lower level?	P. 14-6
	Is ECO Mode activated?	P. 1-23
	Is <b>Privacy Angle</b> set to <b>ON</b> ?	P. 14-5
Display backlight does not light.	Is <b>Lighting</b> under <b>Backlight</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 14-5
Display backlight is sometimes bright, sometimes dim.	Is <b>Brightness</b> under <b>Backlight</b> set to <b>ON</b> ? Light Sensor detects the surrounding brightness and automatically adjusts the Display Backlight brightness.	P. 14-6
Nothing appears in External Display.	Is <b>Indicator Display</b> set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 14-8
Key Illumination flashes in an unset pattern.	Is <b>Event</b> set to <b>ON</b> ? Key Illumination flashes in special patterns for special events.	P. 14-30



# Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Message appears when opening an image, video or song file.	The image, video or song is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appear. <b>Not available</b> and <b>No preview data</b>	-
 appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the <b>Flicker</b> setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 7-14
Images/videos shot on handset are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with <b>Flicker</b> not set to <b>Auto</b> ? Set <b>Flicker</b> to <b>Auto</b> .	P. 7-14
Images/videos shot on handset are blurred.	Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-6, P. 7-8
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-3
Cannot use S! Appli.	Has different USIM Card been inserted? S! Appli becomes unavailable after inserting a different USIM Card. Initialize handset and download S! Appli again.	P. 9-8

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<b>Insert USIM</b> appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-12
<b>Insert microSD</b> or <b>No microSD</b> appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 12-12
<b>Replace with A New One</b> or <b>check the Disk</b> appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 12-19
<b>Function Cannot Operate Any More</b> appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-
<b>Other function active Cannot start</b> appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
<b>Other function active Cannot operate</b> appears.		
<b>Memory shortage</b> appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-



Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<b>Connection failed</b> appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-
(microSD card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted.	P. 12-19
Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used.	Was handset left uncharged for a long period after the battery ran out?	P. 1-21
	Has IC Card Lock or Call Remote Lock been set?	P. 11-3
Handset changes to 3G network even though  indicates strong Wi-Fi signal.	Are you subscribed to the Keitai Wi-Fi service? Connection with Keitai Wi-Fi is unavailable if you are unsubscribed.	-
	Are you connected to a valid access point? Perform <b>Prioritized AP Search</b> again.	P. 13-14
	Are access point settings correct? Check <b>Profile Setting</b> and <b>Connection Status</b> .	P. 13-15

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot use Wi-Fi with the created profile.	Is Wi-Fi activated?	P. 13-11
	Is the profile saved to <b>Priority Settings</b> ?	P. 13-14
	Are access point settings correct? Check <b>Profile Setting</b> and <b>Connection Status</b> .	P. 13-15
	Are you using an access point with a security indicator  ? Enter the security key with <b>Set Security Method</b> .	P. 14-33
Cannot connect to BB mobilepoint.	Did you change any items other than the ID and password for the <b>BB モバイルポイント</b> profile? Connection may become unavailable if profile settings are changed. Perform <b>Reset Profile</b> and configure the settings again.	P. 13-15
Web page for Yahoo! Keitai (PC Site Browser) does not open even though  indicates strong Wi-Fi signal.	Did you move to a different shop or other location while using a public wireless LAN service? If you are going to use the same public wireless LAN service provided at a different location, you may be unable to reconnect for a certain period of time. Wait for a while then connect again.	-



## Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Re-entry of ID and password is requested while using a public wireless LAN service with <i>Direct Access</i> .	Was there no key operation for a certain period of time while using PC Site Browser? Re-enter the ID and password or perform <i>Prioritized AP Search</i> again.	P. 13-14, P. 14-33
The Wi-Fi out of range indicator appears.	Are you using a Bluetooth® device? Stop the Bluetooth® device.	P. 13-8
The MAC address appears as "00:00:00:00:00:00."	After Wi-Fi setup is complete, the correct MAC address appears.	-



## In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
1	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ 1	. / @ - : ~ <sup>1</sup> _ 1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ 2	abcABC 2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ 3	defDEF 3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ 4	ghiGHI 4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ 5	jklJKL 5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ 6	mnoMNO 6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ 7	pqrPQRS 7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8	tuvTUV 8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ 9	wxyzWXYZ 9	9
0	わをんーわ	ワヲンーワ <sup>2</sup> 0	0	0 + <sup>3</sup>
*	。 。 4 5 6	。 。 4 5 6	4 5	*
#	、 。 ? ! ・ (space) <sup>7</sup>	、 。 ? ! ・ (space) <sup>8</sup>	、 . ? ! ' - & ( ) ¥ (space)	#

- 1 Appears as “~” during double-byte entry.
- 2 The lower case of “ワ” can be entered in double-byte mode.
- 3 Press and hold in Phone Number Entry window to enter “+.”
- 4 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.
- 5 to insert line feed “↓.”
- 6 Before confirming characters, press to display “\_” and press again in this state to enter “ ” or “ ”.
- 7 Cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary.
- 8 Only space can be entered when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.





# Text Entry Key Assignments

## In 2-touch Mode

### In Double-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
				っ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/	
						z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			☎ <sup>1</sup>	
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#			♥ <sup>1</sup> 2	
	や		ゆ		よ						
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん <sup>3</sup>	、 <sup>3</sup>	。	6	7	8	9	0	
	わ										

### In Single-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
				ッ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/	
						z					
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	\	&			☎ <sup>1</sup>	
8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#			♥ <sup>1</sup> 2	
	ヤ		ユ		ヨ						
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	@	/	-	_	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	ac.jp	@softbank.ne.jp		
0	ワ	ヲ	ン	、	。	6	7	8	9	0	
	-	,	.	.	.	www	.com	.html	http://	https://	

- When using double-byte mode to enter reading in USIM Phone Book, double-byte katakana are entered instead of hiragana.
  - Press **[\*]** after entering a character to switch upper and lower case.
- Can be entered when entering pictographs is possible, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.
  - Press **[B]** **[O]** to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes.
  - After characters that cannot have “ ” or “ , ” a separate “ ” or “ ” is entered. Before confirming characters, press **[C]** to display “\_” and press again in this state to enter “ ” or “ , ”.
- [ ]**: A space is entered for these key combinations.



## In T9 Input Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode
[1]	Row あ, 1	Row ア, 1	. / @ ? ! ( ) , - _ : ' ~ ^ 5 & ¥ 1 Single-byte space
[2]	Row か, 2	Row カ, 2	abcABC2
[3]	Row さ, 3	Row サ, 3	defDEF3
[4]	Row た, 4	Row タ, 4	ghiGHI4
[5]	Row な, 5	Row ナ, 5	ijklJKL5
[6]	Row は, 6	Row ハ, 6	mnoMNO6
[7]	Row ま, 7	Row マ, 7	pqrPQRS7
[8]	Row や, 8	Row ヤ, 8	tuvTUV8
[9]	Row ら, 9	Row ラ, 9	wxyzWXYZ9
[0]	わをん わー, 0	ワヨン ワ <sup>4</sup> ー, 0	0
[*]	1 2	1 2	2 6
[#]	3	3	

- For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in "In 5-touch Mode."
  - Numbers do not appear when entering reading in USIM Phone Book or Own Dictionary.
  - Press [#] to toggle the case as follows: Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode
  - Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.  
Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.  
Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.
  - Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.
- 1 When editing a reading, pressing [\*] adds/cancels " " or " " ."
  - 2 [\*] to insert line feed " ↓ ."
  - 3 " , " " , " " ? , " " ! , " " . " and "(space)" appear right after a reading or character is determined.
  - 4 The lower case of "ワ" can only be entered in double-byte mode.
  - 5 "ー" is entered in double-byte mode.
  - 6 Pressing before confirming characters enters a space before confirming.



# Kuten Code List

●Actual Display font may differ in appearance from the following.

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9											0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9											0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9											0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9										
010	f										037	θ										139	あ										160	あ									
011	g										038	ι										161	亜										161	亜									
012	h										039	κ										162	西										162	西									
013	i										040	λ										163	薙										163	薙									
014	j										041	μ										164	梓										164	梓									
015	k										042	ξ										164	靴										164	靴									
016	l										043	ο										164	あ										164	あ									
017	m										044	π										164	あ										164	あ									
018	n										045	ρ										164	あ										164	あ									
019	o										046	Α										165	威										165	威									
020	p										047	Β										166	移										166	移									
021	q										048	Γ										167	井										167	井									
022	r										050	Δ										168	稲										168	稲									
023	s										051	Ε										169	引										169	引									
024	t										052	Ζ										170	院										170	院									
026	u										053	Η										170	う										170	う									
027	v										054	Θ										171	汪										171	汪									
028	w										055	Ι										172	雨										172	雨									
029	x										056	Κ										173	鸚										173	鸚									
031	y										057	Λ										173	鸚										173	鸚									
032	z										058	Μ										174	鸚										174	鸚									
033	a										060	①										175	鸚										175	鸚									
034	b										061	②										176	鸚										176	鸚									
035	c										062	③										177	鸚										177	鸚									
036	d										063	④										178	鸚										178	鸚									



1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
178	お	214	吉客宮究巨禦	249	効	286	尺憲履絞	214	汚甥
179	凹	215	吃脚弓窮拒魚	250	后巷控洪紅航紅	287	杓主趣需宗繡遇	215	於
180	央押黃乙	216	腹唐急笈拋亨	251	均巧江紅航紅	288	酌手儒甬修丹	216	鶯桶
181	往橫沖卸	217	桔逆救級拳享	252	厚喉幸攻浩絞	289	爵守首取刈就	217	鶯桶
182	應歐億溫	218	語久求給述	253	口坑瓜昂港網	290	積未受	218	鶯桶
	鶯桶	219	橋逆乞笈拋亨	254	向垢庚兇溝耕	291	愁麗醜獸	219	鶯桶
	鶯桶	220	話求求給述	255	好弘杭皇肯購	292	醒醜醜獸	220	鶯桶
182	か	221	詰求求給述	256	孔取酒酉計購	293	醒醜醜獸	221	鶯桶
183	飯家禍蝦我	222	詰求求給述	257	厚喉幸攻浩絞	294	醒醜醜獸	222	鶯桶
184	佳暇箇貨臥	223	詰求求給述	258	口坑瓜昂港網	295	醒醜醜獸	223	鶯桶
185	加科稼啤画	224	詰求求給述	259	向垢庚兇溝耕	296	醒醜醜獸	224	鶯桶
186	何寡禾課才	225	詰求求給述	260	好弘杭皇肯購	297	醒醜醜獸	225	鶯桶
187	會懷魁開概	226	詰求求給述	261	厚喉幸攻浩絞	298	醒醜醜獸	226	鶯桶
189	蟹慨醫鉢	226	詰求求給述	261	口坑瓜昂港網	299	醒醜醜獸	226	鶯桶
190	灰劫街鈎	227	詰求求給述	261	向垢庚兇溝耕	300	醒醜醜獸	227	鶯桶
191	皆咳鐵驢	228	詰求求給述	261	好弘杭皇肯購	301	醒醜醜獸	228	鶯桶
192	界外該劃	229	詰求求給述	261	厚喉幸攻浩絞	302	醒醜醜獸	229	鶯桶
193	柘形桂荆	230	詰求求給述	261	口坑瓜昂港網	303	醒醜醜獸	230	鶯桶
194	袈袈袈袈	231	詰求求給述	261	向垢庚兇溝耕	304	醒醜醜獸	231	鶯桶
195	卦型敬聖	232	詰求求給述	261	好弘杭皇肯購	305	醒醜醜獸	232	鶯桶
196	袈袈袈袈	233	詰求求給述	261	厚喉幸攻浩絞	306	醒醜醜獸	233	鶯桶
197	袈袈袈袈	234	詰求求給述	261	口坑瓜昂港網	307	醒醜醜獸	234	鶯桶
198	袈袈袈袈	235	詰求求給述	261	向垢庚兇溝耕	308	醒醜醜獸	235	鶯桶
199	袈袈袈袈	236	詰求求給述	261	好弘杭皇肯購	309	醒醜醜獸	236	鶯桶
200	袈袈袈袈	237	詰求求給述	261	厚喉幸攻浩絞	310	醒醜醜獸	237	鶯桶
201	袈袈袈袈	238	詰求求給述	261	口坑瓜昂港網	311	醒醜醜獸	238	鶯桶
202	袈袈袈袈	239	詰求求給述	261	向垢庚兇溝耕	312	醒醜醜獸	239	鶯桶
203	袈袈袈袈	240	詰求求給述	261	好弘杭皇肯購	313	醒醜醜獸	240	鶯桶
204	袈袈袈袈	241	詰求求給述	261	厚喉幸攻浩絞	314	醒醜醜獸	241	鶯桶
205	袈袈袈袈	242	詰求求給述	261	口坑瓜昂港網	315	醒醜醜獸	242	鶯桶
206	袈袈袈袈	243	詰求求給述	261	向垢庚兇溝耕	316	醒醜醜獸	243	鶯桶
207	袈袈袈袈	243	詰求求給述	261	好弘杭皇肯購	317	醒醜醜獸	243	鶯桶
208	袈袈袈袈	244	詰求求給述	261	厚喉幸攻浩絞	318	醒醜醜獸	244	鶯桶
209	袈袈袈袈	245	詰求求給述	261	口坑瓜昂港網	319	醒醜醜獸	245	鶯桶
210	袈袈袈袈	246	詰求求給述	261	向垢庚兇溝耕	320	醒醜醜獸	246	鶯桶
211	袈袈袈袈	247	詰求求給述	261	好弘杭皇肯購	321	醒醜醜獸	247	鶯桶
212	袈袈袈袈	248	詰求求給述	261	厚喉幸攻浩絞	322	醒醜醜獸	248	鶯桶
213	袈袈袈袈	248	詰求求給述	261	口坑瓜昂港網			248	鶯桶













# Weather Indicators

Normally Displayed	
	Clear (Day)
	Clear (Night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder and Lighting
	0% Chance of Rain
	10% Chance of Rain
	20% Chance of Rain
	30% Chance of Rain
	40% Chance of Rain
	50% Chance of Rain
	60% Chance of Rain
	70% Chance of Rain
	80% Chance of Rain
	90% Chance of Rain
	100% Chance of Rain
	Later
	Partial

Pollen Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extremely High

Sakura Blossoms	
	Budding
	Near Full Bloom
	Peak Bloom
	Past Peak

Autumn Foliage	
	No Color
	Moderate Color
	Peak Color
	Past Peak

UV Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Very High

Typhoon	
	Forming
	Approaching
	Emergency Status

Disaster	
	Heavy Rain
	Strong Winds

Topic	
	Notification



- Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to **Basic**.
- See “Check Style Mode Settings” (P. 14-3) for menu items whose default settings differ according to the model color.

## Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	—	—	—	P. 5-10
Outbox	—	—	—	P. 5-14
Draft	—	—	—	P. 5-27
Tomomato-Mail BOX	—	—	—	P. 5-16
Compose Message	—	—	—	P. 5-6
Compose SMS	—	—	—	P. 5-7
Server Mail	Mail List	—	—	P. 5-11, P. 5-24
	Server Mail Memory	—	—	P. 5-24
Retrieve New	—	—	—	P. 5-23
Templates	—	—	—	
Mail Setting	Custom Mail Address	—	—	P. 5-4
	Priority Mail Menu	—	S! Mail Menu	P. 14-19
	Scroll	—	1 Line	
	Font Size	—	Standard	
	Mail List Disp.	—	1 Line+Body	
	Start Attachment (auto)	—	OFF	
	Header/Signature	—	Edit Header, Edit Signature: Not Stored, Edit Quotation Marks:-----, Insert Setting: Selected	P. 14-16, P. 14-18
	Mail Box Lock	—	Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Server Mail: Unlocked	P. 5-17



# Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail Setting	Receiving Setting	—	Operation Preferred	P. 14-17
	Read Out Setting	—	Select Voice: Female 1, Read Out Received Mail: ON	
	Emotion/Keyword	—	Disp. Emotion: ON, Disp. Keyword: OFF	
	S! Mail Settings	—	Auto Receiving: Auto(1MB), Receiving Size: 2MB, Compose Mail Size: 2MB, Delivery Report: OFF	P. 14-16
	SMS Settings	—	SMS Report Request: OFF, SMS Validity Period: 3 Days, SMS Input Character: Japanese(70char.)	P. 14-19
	Check Mail Settings	—	—	
Reset Mail Settings	—	—	—	

## Mail (PC Mail)

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
PC Mail Inbox	—	—	—	P. 5-12
PC Mail Outbox	—	—	—	P. 5-14
PC Mail Draft	—	—	—	P. 5-27
Compose PC Mail	—	—	—	P. 5-7
Retrieve New	—	—	—	P. 5-12
PC Mail Settings	Account Settings	—	See "Account Settings (PC Mail)" (P. 15-35)	—
	Send/Recv. Settings	—	See "Send/Recv. Settings (PC Mail)" (P. 15-36)	
	Priority Mail Menu	—	S! Mail Menu	P. 14-19
	Scroll	—	1 Line	
	Font Size	—	Standard	
	Mail List Disp.	—	1 Line+Body (List Setting: Name)	



2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
PC Mail Settings	Start Attachment(auto)	—	OFF	P. 14-19
	Header/Signature	—	Edit Header, Edit Signature: Not Stored, Edit Quotation Marks:-----, Insert Setting: Selected	P. 14-16, P. 14-18
	Mail Box Lock	—	PC Mail Inbox, PC Mail Outbox, PC Mail Draft: Unlocked	P. 5-17
	Receiving Setting	—	Operation Preferred	P. 14-17
	Emotion/Keyword	—	Disp. Emotion: ON, Disp. Keyword: OFF	
	Check PC Mail Settings	—	—	P. 14-19
	Reset PC Mail Settings	—	—	

## Yahoo!

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-10
Saved Pages	—	—	—	
History	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Enter URL	—	—	—	
PC Site Browser	—	—	See "PC Site Browser under Yahoo!" (P. 15-36).	—



# Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Browser Settings	Font Size	—	Standard	P. 14-20
	Scroll	—	Single Line	
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	
	Flash Sound Effect	—	ON	
	Memory Manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	
	Check Settings	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
Reset	—	—	—	

## S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli List	—	—	—	P. 9-8
Settings	Sound/Vib Settings	—	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 14-25
	Backlight Settings	—	Switch ON/OFF: Link To Phone Set., Blink: ON	
	Reset	—	—	P. 14-26
Information	—	—	—	P. 9-8



## TV

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Watch TV	—	—	—	P. 8-6
Program Guide	—	—	—	P. 8-8
Booking Program List	—	—	—	P. 8-11
Timer Recording List	—	—	—	
Result Timer Rec	—	—	—	P. 8-16
TV Link	—	—	—	P. 8-14
Channel List	—	—	—	P. 8-13
Channel Settings	—	—	—	P. 8-3
User Settings	Subtitles	—	ON (Wide:Bottom)	P. 14-22
	Rec. While Low Battery	—	ON	P. 14-23
	TV Effect	—	Sound Effect: Auto, Visual Image Effect: Dynamic	P. 14-22
	TV Sound While Closed	—	ON	
	TV Power Saving	—	OFF (not set)	
	Display Light	—	Constant Light	
	Data BC Settings	—	Set Image Disp.: ON, Sound Effect: ON	
	Icon Always Show	—	ON	P. 14-22
	Time Shift Setup	—	Auto ON	P. 14-23
	Check TV Settings	—	—	
	Reset Channel Setting	—	—	
	Reset Storage Area	—	—	
	Reset TV Settings	—	—	



# Menu List

## Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Photo Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-6
Movie Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-8
Voice Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-13
Quick Album	—	—	—	P. 12-5
Videos	—	—	—	P. 12-2

## Entertainment

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Wi-Fi Contents	—	—	—	P. 13-16
Mobile Widget	Widget Contents	—	—	P. 10-2
	Settings	—	See "Settings for Mobile Widget under Entertainment" (P. 15-37)	—
S! Quick News	S! Quick News List	—	—	P. 10-4
	Settings	—	See "Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment" (P. 15-38)	—
S! Info Ch./Weather	What's New	—	—	P. 10-5
	History	—	—	
	Register/Cancel	—	—	
	Get Latest Contents	—	—	P. 10-8
	Settings	—	S! Information Notif.: ON, Font Size: Standard	P. 14-28
	Weather Indicator	—	See "Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment" (P. 15-38)	—
BookSurfing	—	—	—	P. 10-7



## Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Alarm	—	44	—	P. 11-17
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 11-9
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 11-16
Dictionary	Enter Word	—	—	P. 2-28
	Text Reader	—	—	—
	Reference History	—	—	P. 2-28
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 11-14
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 11-12
Pedometer	—	—	—	P. 11-19
Life History Viewer	—	—	—	P. 11-7
S! GPS Navi	Navi Appli	—	—	P. 11-5
	Current Location	—	—	
	Position Location	—	—	
	Location Logs	—	—	P. 11-26
	NAVI Settings	—	See "NAVI Settings for S! GPS Navi under Tools" (P. 15-38)	—
Osaifu-Keitai	Lifestyle-Appli	—	—	P. 11-2
	IC Card Lock Set.	—	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock(Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-3
	Call Remote Lock	—	OFF	P. 11-4
	IC Card Illumination	—	ON	P. 14-30
	Interface Settings	—	Browser: ON	P. 14-31
S! Addressbook Back-up	Start Sync	—	—	P. 2-25
	Auto Sync Settings	—	ON/OFF: OFF	P. 14-12
	Sync Log	—	—	P. 2-26





# Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Account Details	—	0	—	P. 1-21
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-21
Text Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-23
Receive Ir Data	—	79	—	P. 13-3
Bluetooth	Device List	—	—	P. 13-6
	Register New Devices	—	—	
	Bluetooth ON/Bluetooth OFF	—	Bluetooth OFF	P. 13-8
	Accept Registered	—	—	
	Bluetooth Settings	—	Time-out to Search: 05 Seconds, Forward Ring Tone: ON, Dial From Other Device: Valid	P. 14-31
Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5, P. 3-18
Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5
Voice Memo	—	43	—	P. 11-15
Voice Announce	—	91	—	P. 14-11
Forwarding Image	—	—	ON	P. 14-12
microSD Manager	—	—	—	P. 12-13
USIM Operation	—	—	—	P. 2-24, P. 5-26



## Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	—	46	—	P. 12-2
Melody	—	16	—	
S! Appli	—	—	—	
Widget	—	—	—	
Ring Songs-Music	—	—	—	
Videos	—	—	—	
Books	—	—	—	
Key Illumination	—	—	—	
TV	—	—	—	
PDF	—	—	—	
Other Documents	—	—	—	

## Music

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 9-5

## Own Data

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Received Calls	—	24	—	P. 3-10
Dialed Calls	—	—	—	
Blog/Mail Member	—	97	—	P. 5-8
Tomo-Den	—	—	—	P. 3-12



# Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Common Phrases	—	38	—	P. 2-15
Own Dictionary	—	82	—	
DL Dictionary	—	—	—	P. 2-16

## Phone Book

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 2-19

## Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Style Mode Setting	—	—	Varies by model color.	P. 14-3
Incoming Call	Ring Volume	50	Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4	P. 14-8
	Select Ring Tone	13	Phone (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 1, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Video Call (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 3, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Mail (Select Ring Tone: You've got mail 1, Select Receiving Disp.: Flying Type)	
	Vibrator	54	Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF	P. 14-9
	Illumination	89	Set Color: Varies by model color., Set Pattern: Pattern 1, Missed Info: ON	P. 14-10
	Manner Mode Setting	20	Manner Mode Set: Manner Mode, Manner Start Time, Manner Release Time: OFF	
	Disp. Phone Book Image	—	ON	P. 14-9
	Answer Setting	58	Any Key Answer	P. 14-8
	Mail Ring Time	68	Mail: ON (Ring Time: 05 Seconds)	
	Ring Time(sec.)	90	Set Mute Seconds: OFF, Missed Calls Display: Display	
Info Notice Setting	65	ON	P. 14-10	



2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Incoming Call	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-4
	Disp. Call/Receive No.	—	Varies by model color.	P. 14-10
Talk	Hyper Clear Voice	—	Low	P. 14-13
	Auto Voice Memo	—	OFF	
	Noise Reduction	76	ON	
	Quality Alarm	75	No Tone	
	Reconnect Signal	77	No Tone	
	Illumination in Talk	—	OFF	
	Set Hold Tone	—	On Hold Tone: Tone 1	
	Setting When Folded	18	End the Call	
Dialing	Pause Dial	84	—	P. 14-12
	Sub-address Setting	—	OFF	
	Prefix Setting	—	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010), 184 (Prefix: 184), 186 (Prefix: 186)	
	Headset SW to Dial	—	OFF	P. 14-11
	Int'l Dial Assistance	—	Auto Int'l Call Set.: ON (Country Code: 日本, IDD Prefix Code: 国際発信), Country Code Setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix Setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 14-13
Video Call	Visual Preference	—	Normal	P. 3-17
	Select Image	—	On Hold, Holding, Substitute Image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice Memo: Pre-installed	P. 14-14
	Auto Redial as Voice	—	OFF	
	Display Setting	—	Main Display: Other Side, Front Camera Reverse: ON	
	Hands-free Switch	—	ON	



# Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Display	Display Setting	56	Varies by model color.	P. 14-3
	Backlight	70	Lighting: 15Sec.+Saver (Light Time: 01 Minutes), Charging: Standard, Brightness: ON+Level 4	P. 14-5
	Display Design	86	Varies by model color.	P. 14-4
	Indicator Display	93	ON (See "Indicator Display for Display under Settings" (P. 15-39))	—
	Font	66	Font Type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character Size: Standard	P. 14-4
	Desktop Icon	63	Theme 1 (Wi-Fiコンテンツを探す, メニューリスト, 各種手続・料金, 待ちうた, S! Quick News List, TV, Photo Mode, Quick Search)	P. 14-6
	3D Display Setting	—	ON	
	言語選択 (Language)	15	日本語	P. 14-5
	Original Menu	52	Account Details, Receive Ir Data, Bluetooth, Calculator, Alarm, Bar Code Reader, Dictionary, My Picture, Books	P. 14-7
	Menu Display Set	57	Menu Display: List, Theme: Varies by model color., Memory Focus: OFF	
	Viewer Settings	—	Picture	P. 14-5
	Auto-change Screen	—	ON	P. 1-8, P. 14-5
	Icons	36	—	P. 1-7
	Icons Setting	—	ON	P. 14-7
	Privacy Angle	—	OFF	P. 14-5
	Image Display Mode	—	Vivid	
	Quick Info Setting	—	Display Sender	
Screen Effect	—	OFF		
Call Time/Charge	Call Data	61	—	
	Set Max Cost Limit	—	Notify Setting: OFF	P. 14-14
	Reset Total	60	—	P. 3-18
	Auto Reset Total Cost	—	OFF	P. 14-14



2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Clock	Set Main Time	31	Time Adjustment: Auto, Summer Time: OFF	P. 14-2
	Set Sub Clock	–	Display Method: OFF, Summer Time: OFF, Area Name: Display	
	Clock Display	39	Display: ON, Size: Small, Color: Varies by model color.	
	Alarm Setting	–	Alarm Preferred	
	Reading Out in Alarm	–	This Function cannot operate in English-Mode.	–
	Clock Alarm Tone Set	–	Alarm Tone	P. 14-2
	Auto Power ON	–	OFF	P. 14-3
	Auto Power OFF	–	OFF	
Security	Lock	–	OFF	P. 4-3
	IC Card Lock Set.	–	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock (Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-3
	Call Remote Lock	–	OFF	P. 11-4
	Keypad Lock	–	After Closed: OFF, Timer: OFF	P. 4-4
	Emission OFF Mode	–	NO (not set)	P. 4-6
	Secret Mode	40	OFF (not set)	P. 4-7
	Secret Data Only Mode	41	OFF (not set)	
	Reject Unknown	–	Accept	P. 4-6
	Call Setting W/O ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User Unset: Accept (Select Ring Tone: Same as Ring Tone, Select Calling Disp.: Same as Display)	
	Change Security Code	29	9999	P. 1-20
	IC Card Authentic.	–	OFF	P. 4-5
PIN Setting	–	PIN1 Code Entry Set: OFF	P. 4-2	
Illumination	Closed Illum.	–	ON (Set Color: Varies by model color., Set Pattern: Pattern 2)	P. 14-29
	Key Illumination	–	ON (See "Key Illumination for Illumination under Settings" (P. 15-40))	–
	Key Backlight	–	Varies by model color.	P. 14-30



# Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
External Connection	USB Mode Setting	—	Communication Mode	P. 13-9
	Headset Usage Setting	51	Headset+speaker	P. 14-11
	Headset Mic. Setting	—	Headset Microphone	
	Auto Answer Setting	94	Phone, Video Call: OFF	
Connection Settings	SMS Center Selection	—	819066519300	P. 14-19
	Certificate	—	All Certificates: Valid	P. 6-13
	Retrieve NW Info	—	—	P. 1-17
Int'l Roaming Set	NW Search Mode	—	Auto	P. 14-15
	PLMN Setting	—	—	
	Select Network	—	AUTO	
	Display Operator Name	—	Display OFF	
Optional Services	Caller ID Notification	17	Activate/Deactivate: ON	P. 3-20
	Voice Mail/Divert	—	—	P. 3-14, P. 3-19
	Call Waiting	—	—	P. 3-19
	Call Barring	—	—	P. 3-20
Wi-Fi Setting	ON/OFF	—	ON	P. 13-11
	Prioritized AP Search	—	—	P. 13-14
	Access Point Settings	—	Priority Settings: Unset	
	Manual Setup	—	See "Manual Setup for Wi-Fi Setting under Settings" (P. 15-41)	—
	Easy Connecting(AOSS)	—	—	P. 13-12
	Easy Connecting(WPS)	—	—	P. 13-13
	Wi-Fi/3G Change Set	—	Auto Mode	P. 14-32
	Reset Wi-Fi Setting	—	—	



2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Other Settings	Keypad Sound	30	OFF	P. 14-10
	Charge Sound	—	ON	
	Open-close Sound	—	Open Sound: Open-1 (Ring Time: 2.0 Seconds), Close Sound: Close-1 (Ring Time: 2.0 Seconds)	P. 14-11
	Battery Level	71	—	P. 1-21
	Network Status	—	—	
	Side Key Guard	—	OFF	P. 1-23
	Character Input Set	35	Input Mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 Change Mode: T9 Kanji Change Mode, CHG Input Size: Standard, Auto Cursor: Normal	P. 14-29
	Shortcut-key Setting	—	Camera	
	Reset Settings	23	—	P. 14-33
	Initialize	—	—	
Software Update	—	—	P. 15-4	

### Account Settings (PC Mail)

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Manual Settings	SMTP Settings	—	SMTP Server Address: Not Stored, SMTP Server Port: 587, Mail Address: Not Stored, SMTP Auth.: ON, SMTP Auth. User ID, SMTP Auth. Password: Not Stored, POP before SMTP: ON, SMTP over SSL: OFF	P. 5-4
	POP3 Settings	—	POP3 Server Address: Not Stored, POP3 Server Port: 110, POP3 Login ID, POP3 Login Password: Not Stored, APOP Auth.: OFF, POP3 over SSL: OFF, Delete Server Mail: OFF	
Set Quick Yahoo! Mail	Mail Address	—	@yahoo.co.jp	P. 5-5
	Password	—	Not Stored	
Yahoo! JAPAN ID	—	—	—	P. 14-19
Edit Account name	—	—	アカウント1/アカウント2/アカウント3	





# Menu List

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Reset Account Settings	—	—	—	P. 14-19

## Send/Recv. Settings (PC Mail)

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Outgoing Account	—	—	Not Stored	P. 14-17
Auto Check	—	—	Manual	P. 14-18
Auto Receiving	—	—	Part	
Manual Receiving	—	—	Part	
Check Interval	—	—	2 Hours	
Inactivate Time	—	—	22:00~06:00	
Auto Check in Roaming	—	—	OFF	

## PC Site Browser under Yahoo!

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	—	—	—	P. 6-5
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-10
History	—	—	—	P. 6-6
Enter URL	—	—	—	
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3



4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
PC Site Brw. Settings	Warning Messages	—	ON	P. 14-21
	Scroll	—	Single Line	P. 14-20
	Display Mode Settings	—	PC Screen: 100%, Small Screen: Standard	P. 14-21
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	P. 14-20
	Memory Manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check PC Site Brw. Set	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
Reset PC Site Brw. Set	—	—		

### Settings for Mobile Widget under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	—	—	ON	P. 14-27
Auto Roaming	—	—	OFF	
Delete Content	—	—	—	
Cookies	—	—	ON	
Delete Cookies	—	—	—	
Standby Disp. Set.	—	—	ON	



# Menu List

## Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	S! Quick News	—	OFF	P. 14-27
	General	—	OFF	
	Special	—	OFF	
Standby Settings	Standby Disp. Set.	—	ON	
	Speed Settings	—	Normal	
	Unread & Read Set.	—	Unread & Read	
Set Image Disp.	—	—	ON	
Del. Quick News	—	—	—	

## Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Weather	—	—	—	P. 10-5
Manual Update	—	—	—	P. 10-9
Settings	Weather Update	—	ON	P. 14-28
	Standby Setting	—	ON	
	Weather Notif.	—	ON	

## NAVI Settings for S! GPS Navi under Tools

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Map Setting	Select Navi Appli	—	NAVITIME	P. 14-31
	Map Activate Setting	—	After positioning	
Location Navi	Service Settings	—	—	P. 11-6



4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Map URL Settings	—	—	1: http://map.navitime.jp, 2, 3, 4, 5: Not Recorded	P. 14-31
Send Location Info	—	—	Confirm	

### Indicator Display for Display under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Disp. Clock Only	—	—	OFF	P. 14-8
Clock Type	—	—	Digital 1	
Called	—	—	ON	
Mail	—	—	ON	
Connection	—	—	ON	
Time Signal	Set Time	—	60 Minutes	
	Set Color	—	Color 7	
	Set Pattern	—	Pattern 6	
Display Time	—	—	15 Seconds	



# Menu List

## Key Illumination for Illumination under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Power ON	—	—	ON	P. 14-30
Power OFF	—	—	ON	
Incoming Call	—	—	Antique Gold	
Dialing	—	—	Rainbow	
Talking Start	—	—	Fun Time	
Mail Receiving	—	—	Antique Gold	
Mail Sending	—	—	Rainbow	
Emotion	—	—	Always	
Alarm	—	—	Reflex White	
Snooze	—	—	ON	
Ir/IC Exchanging	—	—	ON	
Missed Call	—	—	Cosmetic Red	
Open	—	—	Varies by model color.	
Event	—	—	ON	



## Manual Setup for Wi-Fi Setting under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Profile Setting (Select profile)	Set Profile Name	—	—	P. 14-32
	Wi-Fi Detail Setting	—	BBモバイルポイント (ESSID Setting: mobilepoint, Radio Mode Setting: AUTO(802.11b/g)), プロファイル02 to 20 (ESSID Setting: ESSID02 to ESSID20, Radio Mode Setting: AUTO(802.11b/g))	
	IP Setting	—	IP Address Setting, DNS Setting: Automatic Setup	
	HTTP Proxy Setting	—	None	P. 14-33
	Set Security Method	—	BBモバイルポイント: WEP (Set KeyID: 1, Set WEP Key: 64Bit/HEX), プロファイル02 to 20: None	
	Public Wi-Fi Setting	—	OFF	
	Wi-Fi Access Mode	—	Keitai Wi-Fi	
Display Information	Connection Status	—	—	P. 13-15
	MAC Address	—	—	



## Main Specifications

Model	940N	
Dimensions (H×W×D) (When Closed)	Approx. 109 × 50 × 13.9 mm (thickest Part: Approx. 16.4 mm)	
Weight	Approx. 114 g	
Continuous Standby Time	[3G] Approx. 540 hrs [GSM] Approx. 280 hrs	
Continuous Talk Time	[3G] Voice Call: Approx. 220 min. Video Call: Approx. 100 min. [GSM] Voice Call: Approx. 190 min.	
Charging Time	Up to approx. 120 min.	
Display/ External Display	Type	Display: LTPS_TFT 262,144 colors External Display: Organic EL one color
	Size	Display: Approx. 3.2 inches External Display: Approx. 0.77 inches
	Pixels	Display: 409,920 pixels (480 × 854 dots) External Display: 3,744 pixels (96 × 39 dots)

Camera	Imaging device	Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: CMOS
	Lens size	Front Camera: 1/10.0 inch Rear Camera: 1/3.2 inch
	Effective pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 8.1 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 8.0 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Front Camera: Up to approx. 1.9 x Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9.0 x
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files <sup>1</sup>
	Still images for continuous shooting	5 to 20 files <sup>2</sup>
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 218 sec. <sup>3</sup> Memory card: Up to approx. 120 min. <sup>3</sup>
	Video file format	MP4



TV	Continuous watching time	Approx. 180 min.
	Maximum recording time	Approx. 540 min. <sup>4</sup>
Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full®	Storage Capacity	Approx. 195 MB <sup>5</sup>

- 1 In case the image size is **QCIF (176 x 144)** and the image quality is set to **Normal** (the file size is 10 KB).
- 2 Varies depending on the image size.
- 3 Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	Memory card
Image size	QCIF (176 x 144)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	2MB	Long Time
Recording type	Normal	

- 4 Approximate time when recorded on a 2 GB memory card.
- 5 Shared with images, videos, saved pages, books, images (captured with TV), PDF files and graphic mail templates.

## Handset Materials

Where Used		Material/Finish
Multi Selector center key		PC resin, aluminum vapor deposition + UV coating
Rear Camera		ABS resin, tin vapor deposition + UV coating
Battery compartment	Screws	Iron, zinc plating (chromate)
	USIM Card cover	Stainless alloy
	Terminals	Copper alloy, gold plating
Charger terminals		Copper alloy, gold plating
Battery (terminals)		Epoxy resin (glass epoxy), gold plating





## Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000 <sup>1</sup>	—
Schedule	Events	2,500	—
	Holidays	100	—
To Do List	Tasks	100	—
S! Mail/SMS	Received messages	1,000 <sup>2 3 4 5</sup>	1,000 <sup>2</sup>
	Sent messages	400 <sup>2 3 4</sup>	200 <sup>2</sup>
	Draft messages	20 <sup>2</sup>	—
PC Mail	Received messages	1000 <sup>2 4</sup>	1000 <sup>2</sup>
	Sent messages	400 <sup>2 4</sup>	200 <sup>2</sup>
	Draft messages	20 <sup>2</sup>	—
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100 <sup>5 6</sup>	—
	PC Site Browser	100 <sup>6</sup>	—
Saved Pages		100 <sup>2</sup>	50 <sup>2</sup>
S! Appli		99 <sup>2 5</sup>	—
Still images		1,000 <sup>2 4</sup>	—
Videos		100 <sup>2 6</sup>	—
Captured screenshots (TV)		100 <sup>2</sup>	—
Widgets		100 <sup>2 5</sup>	—
Melody files		400 <sup>2</sup>	—

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Songs		100 <sup>2</sup>	—
books		400 <sup>2</sup>	—
Key Illumination Patterns		50	—
PDF files		400 <sup>2</sup>	—
Template (Graphic Mail)		1,000 <sup>5</sup>	—
Answering Machine	Voice calls	5 (20 sec. each)	—
	Video calls	2 (20 sec. each)	—
Voice Memo		1 (20 sec.)	—
Dialed Calls		30	—
Received Calls		30	—
Speed Dial		10 (Entry Number 000-009)	—

- 1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.
- 2 The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.
- 3 An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.
- 4 Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.
- 5 Includes data stored by default.
- 6 Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.



## Memory Card Folders & Files

Folder			File	
DCIM	XXXNECDT <sup>1</sup>		Still images captured with Camera and JPEG images copied or moved from handset	
MISC			Settings file for DPOF printing	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail	Drafts	Backup data of Draft
			Inbox	Backup data of Inbox
			Sent Messages	Backup data of Outbox
		Utility	Calendar	Backup data of Schedule
			Contacts	Backup data of Phone Book
			Memo	Backup data of Text Memo
			Rights	Backup file of content keys
			Tasks	Backup file of To Do List
		My Items	Book	Book files
			Bookmarks	Backup file of Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash <sup>®</sup> files
			Games and More	S! Appli files
			Music	Songs
			Other Documents	PDF files or Other document files
			Pictograms	My Pictograms
Pictures	Still images			
Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies			



# Specifications

Folder			File
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	My Items	Videos
			Widget
		NE_Folder	Other files
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO	TV Program recording management file	
	PRGXXX <sup>2</sup>	TV Program recording files	

- 1 XXX: Three single-byte numbers from 100 to 999
- 2 XXX: Three single-byte alphanumeric characters (hexadecimal) from 001 to FFF



<b>Number</b>	
2-touch Mode .....	2-16
3D Display Setting .....	14-6
5-touch Mode .....	2-12

## A

<b>Access Files</b> .....	12-3
Composite Image .....	12-16
List Setting .....	12-17
Set Image Disp. ....	12-16
<b>Access Handset Functions</b> .....	2-2
<b>Access History</b> .....	6-3, 6-6
Delete .....	6-12
<b>Access Points</b> .....	13-13
<b>Access the Internet</b>	
From Bookmarks .....	6-10
From Data Broadcasts .....	8-7
From Entered URL Record .....	6-12
From Scanned Data .....	11-29
From TV Links .....	8-14
From URL in Text .....	5-27
From Web Page .....	6-13
Open New Tab .....	6-7
PC Site Browser .....	6-5
Use Access History .....	6-3, 6-6
Yahoo! Keitai .....	6-3
<b>Account Details</b> .....	1-21
<b>Add Folder</b>	
Bookmark .....	6-15

Data Folder .....	12-11
Messages .....	5-26
<b>Adjust Earpiece Volume</b> .....	3-3, 3-8
<b>After Sales Service</b> .....	15-60
<b>Alarm</b> .....	11-17
Cancel .....	11-18
Edit .....	11-28
Release All .....	11-28
Set .....	11-17
<b>Alarm Activation Operations</b> .....	11-17
<b>Alarm Notification Operations</b>	
Schedule .....	11-10
To Do List .....	11-12
<b>Alarm Setting</b> .....	14-2
<b>Answer Calls</b>	
Bluetooth® .....	13-7
Video Calls .....	3-8
Voice Calls .....	3-4
<b>Answer Setting</b> .....	14-9
<b>Answering Machine</b> .....	3-4
Activate When a Call Arrives .....	3-4
Delete Messages .....	3-18
Play Messages .....	3-5
Settings .....	3-4
<b>Any Key Answer</b> .....	14-9
<b>Attach to Mail</b>	
Bookmark .....	6-15
Delete Attached Files .....	5-22
Files .....	5-7
Shot Still Image/Video .....	5-21

<b>Authentication Password</b> .....	13-3
<b>Auto Answer Setting</b> .....	14-11
<b>Auto Check</b> .....	14-18
<b>Auto Check in Roaming</b> .....	14-18
<b>Auto Cursor</b> .....	14-29
<b>Auto Power On/Off</b> .....	14-3
<b>Auto Receiving (PC Mail)</b> .....	14-18
<b>Auto Receiving (S! Mail)</b> .....	14-17
<b>Auto Redial as Voice</b> .....	14-14
<b>Auto Refresh (Mobile Widget)</b> ...	14-27
<b>Auto Refresh (S! Quick News)</b> ...	14-27
<b>Auto Reset Total Cost</b> .....	14-14
<b>Auto Roaming</b> .....	14-27
<b>Auto Save Set</b> .....	7-4
<b>Auto Timer</b> .....	7-11
<b>Auto Voice Memo</b> .....	14-13
<b>Auto-change Screen</b> .....	1-8, 14-5
<b>Auto-sort</b> .....	5-16

## B

<b>Backlight</b> .....	14-5
<b>Backlight Settings (S! Appli)</b> .....	14-25
<b>Bar Code Reader</b> .....	11-21
Check Scanned Data .....	11-21
Delete Scanned Data .....	11-30
Scan .....	11-21
<b>Basic Key Operations</b> .....	1-3
<b>Battery</b> .....	1-13



Installation .....	1-13
<b>Blog/Mail Member .....</b>	<b>5-8</b>
Add Addresses .....	5-8
Delete Addresses .....	5-22
Edit Address .....	5-22
Set Default Blog Address .....	5-8
Specify Recipients .....	5-20
<b>Bluetooth® .....</b>	<b>13-5</b>
Add New Device .....	13-6
Connecting .....	13-6
Delete Added Device .....	13-17
Device List .....	13-7
Discontinue .....	13-8
Playing Music .....	13-7
Search .....	13-6
Settings .....	14-31
Talk .....	13-7
<b>Bluetooth Info .....</b>	<b>14-32</b>
<b>Bookmarks .....</b>	<b>6-10</b>
Access Page .....	6-10
Add Folder .....	6-15
Delete .....	6-16
Delete Folder .....	6-15
Edit URL .....	6-15
Move .....	6-15
Number of Bookmarks .....	6-15
Save .....	6-10
Save Scanned URL .....	11-30
Send by S! Mail .....	6-15
Sort Folder .....	6-15
<b>Books .....</b>	<b>10-7</b>

<b>BookSurfing® .....</b>	<b>10-7</b>
---------------------------	-------------

## C

<b>Calculator .....</b>	<b>11-16</b>
<b>Call Barring .....</b>	<b>3-20</b>
<b>Call Forwarding .....</b>	<b>3-14</b>
<b>Call Rejection .....</b>	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Call Time/Charge .....</b>	<b>3-11</b>
<b>Call Waiting .....</b>	<b>3-19</b>
<b>Call While Abroad .....</b>	<b>3-13</b>
<b>Caller ID .....</b>	<b>3-20</b>
<b>Camera .....</b>	<b>7-2</b>
Auto Save Set .....	7-4
Blog Upload .....	7-14
Capture Still Images .....	7-6
Effect .....	7-14
Flicker .....	7-14
Memory Info .....	7-14
Movie Type Set .....	7-14
Quality Setting .....	7-14
Quick Album .....	12-5
Record Videos .....	7-8
Settings .....	14-24
Shake Correction .....	7-4, 7-14
Switch Cameras .....	7-5
Viewfinders .....	7-3
<b>Capture Still Images .....</b>	<b>7-6</b>
Auto Timer .....	7-11
Continuous Shooting .....	7-10
Frame .....	7-11

Panoramic Shooting .....	7-11
Smile Mode .....	7-10
<b>Center Access Code .....</b>	<b>1-20</b>
<b>Certificate .....</b>	<b>6-13</b>
<b>Chance Capture .....</b>	<b>7-12</b>
<b>Change .....</b>	
Entry Number .....	2-30
Font Size (Message Text) .....	5-28
Graphic Mail Effects .....	5-22
Icon Image .....	2-27
Network Password .....	3-20
PIN1/PIN2 .....	4-2
Security Code .....	1-20
Set To, Cc or Bcc .....	5-20
<b>Change Skin .....</b>	<b>14-25</b>
<b>Channel List .....</b>	<b>14-22</b>
Delete a Channel .....	14-22
Remote Control Numbers .....	14-22
Save Stations of a Different Area .....	8-13
Switch .....	8-13
<b>Channel Settings .....</b>	<b>8-3</b>
Automatic .....	8-13
<b>Character Stamp .....</b>	<b>12-9</b>
<b>Charge Battery .....</b>	<b>1-13</b>
AC Charger .....	1-15
Desktop Holder .....	1-16
<b>Charge Sound .....</b>	<b>14-10</b>
<b>Check Battery Level .....</b>	<b>1-21</b>
<b>Check Interval .....</b>	<b>14-18</b>
<b>Check Mail Settings .....</b>	<b>14-19</b>



- Check PC Mail Settings ..... 14-19
  - Check PC Site Brw. Set ..... 14-20
  - Check settings (Yahoo! Keitai) .. 14-20
  - Check TV Settings ..... 14-23
  - CHG Input Method ..... 2-12
  - CHG Input Size ..... 14-29
  - Clear Learned (Text Entry) ..... 14-29
  - Clock ..... 14-2
  - Clock Alarm Tone Set ..... 14-2
  - Clock Display ..... 14-2
  - Closed Illumination ..... 14-29
  - Codes ..... 1-20
    - Center Access Code ..... 1-20
    - Network Password ..... 1-20
    - PIN1/PIN2 ..... 1-11
    - Security Code ..... 1-20
  - Compose & Send Messages
    - Attach Files ..... 5-7
    - Compose PC Mail ..... 5-7
    - Compose S! Mail ..... 5-6
    - Compose SMS ..... 5-7
    - Delete Receiver ..... 5-20
    - Edit ..... 5-27
    - From Phone Book ..... 2-31
    - From Scanned Data ..... 11-29
    - From Tomo-Den ..... 3-12
    - From Web Page ..... 6-13
    - Graphic Mail ..... 5-6
    - Insert Header/Signature ..... 5-20
    - Save ..... 5-21
  - Set Default Mail Size ..... 14-16
  - Specify Blog/Mail Member List
    - Recipients ..... 5-20
    - To, Cc or Bcc ..... 5-20
  - Compose Messages ..... 5-6, 5-7
  - Continuous Shooting ..... 7-10
  - Cookie Settings (Internet) ..... 14-20
  - Cookie Settings (Mobile Widget) ..... 14-27
  - Copy
    - Between Handset & Memory Card ..... 12-14
    - Event ..... 11-27
    - Phone Book Entries ..... 2-24, 2-31
    - SMS Messages ..... 5-26
    - Text ..... 2-14
  - Customer Service ..... 15-61
  - Customize Mail Address ..... 5-4
- ## D
- Data BC Settings ..... 14-23
  - Data Broadcasts ..... 8-7
  - Data Folder ..... 12-2
    - Add Folder ..... 12-11
    - Change Order of Files ..... 12-16
    - Check File Information ..... 12-16
    - Delete Files ..... 12-18
    - Delete Folder ..... 12-18
    - Edit File Name ..... 12-18
    - Edit Folder Name ..... 12-17
    - Edit Still Images ..... 12-9
  - Edit Videos ..... 12-10
  - Memory Info ..... 12-18
  - Move Files ..... 12-11
  - Open Files ..... 12-3
  - Original Animation ..... 12-6
  - Playlist (Melody) ..... 12-7
  - Playlist (Video) ..... 12-7
  - Quick Album ..... 12-5
  - Ringtone ..... 12-16
  - Secret Folders ..... 4-7
  - Stand-by Display ..... 12-16
  - Delete All LifeApp ..... 14-31
  - Delete All S! App ..... 14-26
  - Delete Cache ..... 14-20
  - Delete Content (Mobile Widget) ..... 14-27
  - Delete Cookies ..... 14-20
  - Delete Quick News ..... 14-27
  - Delivery Report (S! Mail) ..... 14-16
  - Desktop Icon Settings ..... 14-6
  - Desktop Icons ..... 2-3
    - Add Icons ..... 2-6
    - CHG Icon Image ..... 2-27
    - Delete Desktop Icons ..... 2-27
    - Reset ..... 2-27
    - Show/Hide ..... 2-27
    - Sort ..... 2-27
  - Desktop Info ..... 2-6
  - Dial
    - Bluetooth® ..... 13-7



- From Dialed Calls ..... 3-10
- From Phone Book ..... 2-21
- From Received Calls ..... 3-10
- From Redial ..... 3-10
- From Scanned Data ..... 11-29
- From Tomo-Den ..... 3-12
- From Web Page ..... 6-13
- Global Roaming ..... 3-13
- International Calls ..... 3-3
- Phone Number in Message Text ..... 5-27
- Video Calls ..... 3-7
- Voice Calls ..... 3-3
- Dial From Other Device ..... 14-32**
- Dial Lock ..... 4-3**
- Dialed Calls ..... 3-10**
- Dictionaries ..... 2-15**
- Disp. Call/Receive No. .... 14-10**
- Disp. Phone Book Image ..... 14-9**
- Display Design ..... 14-4**
- Display Indicators ..... 1-6**
- Display Light (TV) ..... 14-22**
- Display Mode Settings ..... 14-21**
- Display Operator Name ..... 14-15**
- Display Setting ..... 14-3**
- Display Setting (Video Call) ..... 14-14**
- DL Dictionary ..... 2-16**
  - Delete ..... 2-30
- Download**
  - Books ..... 10-7
  - Music ..... 9-4

- S! Appli ..... 9-8
- Templates (Graphic Mail) ..... 5-23
- Widgets ..... 10-2
- Downloads ..... 14-20**
- DPOF setting ..... 12-15**
  - Cancel ..... 12-19

## E

- ECO Mode ..... 1-23**
- Edit**
  - Address (Blog/Mail Member) ..... 5-22
  - Alarm Settings ..... 11-28
  - Blog/Mail Member List Name ..... 5-22
  - Event ..... 11-27
  - File Name (Data Folder) ..... 12-18
  - Folder Name (Bookmark) ..... 6-15
  - Folder Name (Data Folder) ..... 12-17
  - Folder Name (Messages) ..... 5-26
  - Folder Name (Templates) ..... 2-29
  - Own Dictionary ..... 2-29
  - Phone Book Entry ..... 2-31
  - Record Timer Settings ..... 8-15
  - Re-entering in T9 Input Mode ..... 2-17
  - Still Images ..... 12-9
  - Template (Graphic Mail) ..... 5-23
  - Templates (Common Phrases) ..... 2-15, 2-29
  - Text ..... 2-14
  - URL (Bookmark) ..... 6-15
  - Videos ..... 12-10
  - View Timer Settings ..... 8-15

- Edit Account name ..... 14-19**
- Edit Still Images ..... 12-9**
  - Brightness ..... 12-17
  - Change Size ..... 12-17
  - Character Stamp ..... 12-9
  - Correct Backlight ..... 12-17
  - Frame ..... 12-9
  - Marker Stamp ..... 12-9
  - Refresh Skin Tone ..... 12-17
  - Retouch ..... 12-17
  - Rotate ..... 12-17
  - Trim away ..... 12-10
- Edit Videos ..... 12-10**
- Emission OFF Mode ..... 4-6**
- Emotion/Keyword ..... 14-17**
- Emotion-Expressing Mail ..... 5-10**
- Enter URL ..... 6-3, 6-6**
  - Delete Records ..... 6-13
- External Display ..... 1-8**
- External Display Settings ..... 14-8**

## F

- FeliCa Mark ..... 1-2**
  - IC Card Authentication ..... 4-5
  - IC Card Illumination ..... 14-30
  - Osaifu-Keitai® ..... 11-2
- Flash Sound Effect ..... 14-20**
- Font ..... 14-4**
- Font Size (Internet) ..... 14-20**



Font Size (Mail) .....	14-19
Font Size (S! Info Channel) .....	14-28
Forward (Message) .....	5-27
Forward Ring Tone .....	14-32
Forwarding Image (Phone Book) .....	14-12
Frame .....	7-11, 12-9

**G**

<b>Global Roaming</b> .....	<b>3-13</b>
Call Japan and Other Countries .....	3-13
Call within the Same Country .....	3-13
Settings .....	14-15
<b>Graphic Mail</b>	
Cancel Effects .....	5-22
Create .....	5-6
Create Automatically .....	5-22
Create from a Template .....	5-23
Delete Templates .....	5-23
Edit a Template .....	5-23
Save Template .....	5-22
<b>Group Calling</b> .....	<b>3-20</b>
<b>Group Setting (Phone Book)</b> .....	<b>14-12</b>
Ring Tone/Image .....	2-23

**H**

<b>Handset Parts</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Handsfree</b> .....	<b>3-17</b>
<b>Hands-free Switch (Video Call)</b> ..	<b>14-14</b>

<b>Header/Signature</b> .....	<b>14-16, 14-18</b>
<b>Headset Mic. Setting</b> .....	<b>14-11</b>
<b>Headset SW to Dial</b> .....	<b>14-11</b>
<b>Headset Usage Setting</b> .....	<b>14-11</b>
<b>Holidays</b> .....	<b>11-10</b>
<b>Hyper Clear Voice</b> .....	<b>3-17</b>

**I**

<b>IC Card Authentication</b> .....	<b>4-5</b>
Activate .....	4-5
Register .....	4-5
<b>IC Card Illumination</b> .....	<b>14-30</b>
<b>Icon Always Show (Camera)</b> .....	<b>14-24</b>
<b>Icon Always Show (TV)</b> .....	<b>14-22</b>
<b>Icons Setting</b> .....	<b>14-7</b>
<b>Illumination</b> .....	<b>14-9</b>
<b>Illumination in Talk</b> .....	<b>14-13</b>
<b>Image</b>	
Capture .....	7-6
Edit .....	12-9
<b>Image Display Mode</b> .....	<b>14-5</b>
<b>Inactivate Time</b> .....	<b>14-18</b>
<b>Incoming Call Image</b> .....	<b>14-9</b>
<b>Incoming Message Image</b> .....	<b>14-9</b>
<b>Info Notice Setting</b> .....	<b>14-10</b>
<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>
Authentication Password .....	13-3
Receive All .....	13-4
Receive One File .....	13-3

Send All Ir Data .....	13-3
Send One File .....	13-3
<b>Infrared Port</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Initial Setup</b> .....	<b>1-17</b>
<b>Initialize</b> .....	<b>14-33</b>
<b>Initialized Browser</b> .....	<b>14-20</b>
<b>Input Mode</b> .....	<b>14-29</b>
<b>Insertion &amp; Removal</b>	
Battery .....	1-13
Memory Card .....	12-12
USIM Card .....	1-12
<b>Int'l Dial Assistance</b> .....	<b>14-13</b>
<b>Interface Settings</b> .....	<b>14-31</b>
<b>Internal Antenna</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
<b>International Calls</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>
Enter " + " .....	3-16
<b>Internet</b> .....	<b>6-2</b>
Access History .....	6-3, 6-6
Connect .....	6-3, 6-5
Enter URL .....	6-3, 6-6
Home .....	6-12
Page Operations .....	6-7
Quick Search .....	6-14
Reload .....	6-13
Send URL by S! Mail .....	6-13
Settings .....	14-20
Toggle 3G & Wi-Fi .....	6-12
<b>Interval/Number</b> .....	<b>14-24</b>





## J

JAN Code ..... 11-21

## K

Key Backlight ..... 14-30

Key Illumination ..... 1-21

Settings ..... 14-30

Keypad Lock ..... 4-4

Setting ..... 4-4

Unlock Temporarily ..... 4-4

Keypad Sound ..... 14-10

## L

Language (言語選択) ..... 14-5

Life History Viewer ..... 11-7

Display setting ..... 11-27

Reload ..... 11-27

Lock

Dial Lock ..... 4-3

IC Card Lock ..... 11-3

Keypad Lock ..... 4-4

Original Lock ..... 4-3

Remote Lock ..... 11-4

Secure Remote Lock ..... 4-5

## M

Mail ..... 5-2

Add Folder ..... 5-26

Auto-sort ..... 5-16

Delete ..... 5-25

Delete All Reports ..... 5-25

Delete Attached Files ..... 5-26

Delete Folder ..... 5-26

Delete Read ..... 5-25

Draft ..... 5-27

Edit ..... 5-27

Filter ..... 5-28

Folder Lock ..... 5-17

Forward ..... 5-27

Mail Box Lock ..... 5-17

Mail Windows ..... 5-15

Message Folders ..... 5-14

Move ..... 5-25

Number of Messages ..... 5-26

Protect ..... 5-25

Search Mail ..... 5-28

Secret Folders ..... 5-17

Settings ..... 14-16

Sort ..... 5-28

Sort Folder ..... 5-26

Tomomato-Mail ..... 5-16

Mail List Disp. ..... 14-19

Mail Ring Time ..... 14-8

Mail Setting ..... 14-16

Main Menu ..... 2-2

Change Theme ..... 2-27

Manner Mode ..... 1-19

Manner Mode Set ..... 14-10

Manner Release Time ..... 14-10

Manner Start Time ..... 14-10

Original ..... 14-10

Manual Receiving ..... 14-18

Manufacture Number ..... 14-20

Map Setting ..... 14-31

Map URL Settings ..... 14-31

Marker Stamp ..... 12-9

Melody Playback

Playlist ..... 12-7

Set Repeat Play ..... 12-17

Memory Card ..... 12-12

Access Data ..... 12-13

Access Files ..... 12-3

Check & Repair ..... 12-19

Check Available Memory Space ..... 12-18

Copy Data from Handset ..... 12-14

Copy Data to Handset ..... 12-14

Delete Data ..... 12-19

DPOF setting ..... 12-15

Folders & Files ..... 15-45

Format ..... 12-13

Insert & Remove ..... 12-12

Transfer WMA Data ..... 9-4

Memory Space (Memory info)

Bookmarks ..... 6-15

Camera ..... 7-14

Data Folder ..... 12-18

Memory Card ..... 12-18

Messages ..... 5-26

Music ..... 9-11

Number of Saved Pages ..... 6-16



Phone Book .....	2-31
S! Appli .....	9-12
Schedules .....	11-27
Server Mail Memory .....	5-24
<b>Menu Display Set .....</b>	<b>14-7</b>
<b>Menu List .....</b>	<b>15-21</b>
<b>Missed Calls .....</b>	<b>3-10</b>
<b>Mobile Widget .....</b>	<b>1-9, 10-2</b>
Change Position of widgets .....	10-8
Delete from Desktop Page .....	10-8
Downloading Contents .....	10-2
Paste Contents .....	10-3
Place widgets in Foreground or Background .....	10-8
Settings .....	14-27
Toggle Page .....	10-2
Update Display .....	10-8
Use .....	10-2
<b>Modem .....</b>	<b>13-10</b>
<b>Move</b>	
Bookmarks .....	6-15
Files .....	12-11
Messages .....	5-25
<b>Multitask .....</b>	<b>2-9</b>
Activate Another Function .....	2-9
Combinations .....	15-2
Toggle Functions .....	2-10
<b>Music Player (Video Player) .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
Playback Windows .....	9-3
Settings .....	14-25

<b>My Phone Number .....</b>	<b>1-21</b>
------------------------------	-------------

---

## N

<b>Net Access .....</b>	<b>14-25</b>
<b>Network Information .....</b>	<b>1-17</b>
<b>Network Password .....</b>	<b>1-20</b>
<b>Network Status .....</b>	<b>1-21</b>
<b>Noise Reduction .....</b>	<b>14-13</b>
<b>Notify Caller ID .....</b>	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Number of Entries</b>	
Bookmarks .....	6-15
Events .....	11-27
Phone Book Entries .....	2-31
Saved Messages .....	5-26
<b>NW Search Mode .....</b>	<b>14-15</b>

---

## O

<b>One Seg Digital TV .....</b>	<b>8-2</b>
<b>Open Inbox Messages .....</b>	<b>5-10</b>
<b>Open New Messages .....</b>	<b>5-10</b>
<b>Open-close Sound .....</b>	<b>14-11</b>
<b>Optional Services .....</b>	<b>3-14</b>
<b>Original Animation .....</b>	<b>12-6</b>
<b>Original Lock .....</b>	<b>4-3</b>
Customize .....	4-4
Settings .....	4-3
<b>Original Manner Mode .....</b>	<b>14-10</b>
<b>Original Menu .....</b>	<b>2-3, 14-7</b>
<b>Osaifu-Keitai® .....</b>	<b>11-2</b>

Activate Lifestyle-Appli .....	11-3
Download Lifestyle-Appli .....	11-2
Restrict Use .....	11-3
Settings .....	14-30
Use .....	11-3
<b>Outgoing Account .....</b>	<b>14-17</b>
<b>Own Dictionary .....</b>	<b>2-15</b>
Delete .....	2-30
Edit .....	2-29

---

## P

<b>Panoramic Shooting .....</b>	<b>7-11</b>
<b>Pause Dial .....</b>	<b>3-17, 14-12</b>
<b>PC Connection .....</b>	<b>13-9</b>
Access Memory Card Data .....	13-9
Packet Transmission .....	13-10
USB Mode Setting .....	13-9
<b>PC Mail Setting .....</b>	<b>5-4</b>
<b>PC Site Browser .....</b>	<b>6-5</b>
Change Disp. Mode .....	6-12
Windows .....	6-5
<b>Pedometer .....</b>	<b>11-19</b>
Activate .....	11-19
Paced Steps (きっちり歩数) .....	11-19
Reset .....	11-29
Set .....	11-19
View Data .....	11-20
Walking Target .....	11-28
<b>Phone Book</b>	
Access Entries from Other Functions .....	2-22



Change Entry Number .....	2-30
Change Index Tab .....	2-30
Check Number of Entries .....	2-31
Copy .....	2-31
Copy to USIM Card .....	2-24
Create Entries .....	2-20
Create Entries from Other Functions .....	2-20
Delete Entries .....	2-32
Delete Items .....	2-32
Dial .....	2-21
Edit an Entry .....	2-31
Group Setting .....	14-12
Read Map .....	2-31
Restrictions .....	2-23
Ring Tone/Image .....	2-23
S! Addressbook Back-up .....	2-25
Save from Scanned Data .....	11-30
Search .....	2-21
Send Entries by S! Mail .....	2-32
Set Incoming Image .....	2-20
Set Preferred Search Method .....	14-12
Set Secret .....	2-24
<b>PIN Lock &amp; Cancellation .....</b>	<b>1-11</b>
<b>PIN1/PIN2 .....</b>	<b>1-11</b>
Change PIN1/PIN2 .....	4-2
PIN1 Code Entry Set .....	4-2
<b>Place Calls on Hold .....</b>	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Play</b>	
Answering Machine .....	3-5
Music .....	9-5
Playlist .....	9-6
Recorded Program .....	8-9
Voice Announce .....	14-11
Voice Mail .....	3-15
Voice Memo .....	3-5
<b>Playlist (Songs) .....</b>	<b>9-6</b>
Add Music .....	9-11
Cancel Playlist Songs .....	9-11
Create .....	9-6
Delete .....	9-12
Play .....	9-6
Sort Playlist .....	9-11
<b>PLMN Setting .....</b>	<b>14-15</b>
<b>POP3 Settings .....</b>	<b>5-5</b>
<b>Power On/Off .....</b>	<b>1-17</b>
<b>Prefix Numbers .....</b>	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Prefix Setting .....</b>	<b>14-12</b>
<b>Priority Mail Menu .....</b>	<b>14-19</b>
<b>Privacy Angle .....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
<b>Profile .....</b>	<b>13-15</b>
Copy .....	13-15
Reset .....	13-15
Setting .....	14-32
<b>Program Guide .....</b>	<b>8-8</b>
<b>Q</b>	
<b>QR Code .....</b>	<b>11-21</b>
<b>Quality Alarm .....</b>	<b>14-13</b>
<b>Quick Album .....</b>	<b>12-5</b>
<b>Quick Info Setting .....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
<b>Quick Search .....</b>	<b>5-28, 6-14, 11-27</b>
<b>Quick Silent .....</b>	<b>14-9</b>
<b>R</b>	
<b>Read Out Message .....</b>	<b>5-24</b>
<b>Read Out Setting .....</b>	<b>14-17</b>
<b>Receive &amp; Open Messages .....</b>	<b>5-10</b>
Auto Receiving .....	14-18
Manually Retrieve S! Mail Messages .....	5-23
Open New Messages .....	5-10
Open PC Mail Inbox Messages .....	5-12
Opening S! Mail & SMS Inbox Messages .....	5-10
Read Out Message .....	5-24
Reply .....	5-11, 5-12
Restrict Incoming S! Mail Size .....	14-18
Retrieve Complete S! Mail/PC Mail .....	5-24
Retrieve New PC Mail .....	5-12
Save Attachments .....	5-18
Use Mail List .....	5-11
<b>Received Calls .....</b>	<b>3-10</b>
<b>Receiving Setting .....</b>	<b>14-17</b>
<b>Reconnect Signal .....</b>	<b>14-13</b>
<b>Record at Low Battery .....</b>	<b>14-23</b>
<b>Record Sound</b>	
Sound without Video (Voice Mode) .....	7-13
Voice Announce .....	14-11
Voice Memo .....	3-4, 11-15
<b>Record Timer .....</b>	<b>8-11</b>
<b>Record Videos .....</b>	<b>7-8</b>



- Auto Timer ..... 7-11
  - Chance Capture ..... 7-12
  - Speed Movie ..... 7-12
  - Voice Mode ..... 7-13
  - Redial** ..... 3-10
  - Register S! Quick News**
  - Contents ..... 10-4
  - Reject Calls w/o Caller ID ..... 4-6
  - Reject Unknown ..... 4-6
  - Remote Control Numbers ..... 14-22
  - Reply to Messages ..... 5-11, 5-12
  - Reset**
  - Blog/Mail Member List Name ..... 5-22
  - Channel Settings ..... 14-23
  - Confirmation Window
  - (Data Broadcasts) ..... 14-23
  - Desktop Icons ..... 2-27
  - Folder Name (Common Phrases) ..... 2-29
  - Handset ..... 14-33
  - Holidays ..... 11-27
  - Mail Settings ..... 14-19
  - Memory Card ..... 12-13
  - My Phone Number ..... 1-21
  - Original Menu ..... 14-7
  - PC Mail Account Settings ..... 14-19
  - PC Site Browser Settings ..... 14-20
  - Pedometer Measurements ..... 11-29
  - S! Appli Settings ..... 14-26
  - S! Quick News Contents ..... 14-27
  - SMS Center Selection ..... 14-19
  - Total Call Cost ..... 3-19
  - Total Call Time ..... 3-18
  - TV Settings ..... 14-23
  - Wi-Fi Setting ..... 14-32
  - Yahoo! Keitai Settings ..... 14-20
  - Reset (S! Appli)** ..... 14-26
  - Reset (Yahoo! Keitai)** ..... 14-20
  - Reset Account Settings** ..... 14-19
  - Reset Channel Setting** ..... 14-23
  - Reset Mail Settings** ..... 14-19
  - Reset PC Mail Settings** ..... 14-19
  - Reset PC Site Brw. Set** ..... 14-20
  - Reset Settings** ..... 14-33
  - Reset Storage Area (TV)** ..... 14-23
  - Reset Total Cost** ..... 3-19
  - Reset Total Duration** ..... 3-18
  - Reset TV Settings** ..... 14-23
  - Reset Wi-Fi Setting** ..... 14-32
  - Retrieve New** ..... 5-23
  - Ring Volume** ..... 14-8
- 
- S**
- S! Addressbook Back-up** ..... 2-25
  - Auto Synchronize ..... 14-12
  - Check Settings ..... 14-12
  - Check Synchronize Log ..... 2-26
  - Delete Synchronize Log ..... 2-32
  - Synchronization Type ..... 2-25
  - Use ..... 2-25
  - S! Appli** ..... 9-8
  - Activate ..... 9-8
  - Delete ..... 9-12
  - Download ..... 9-8
  - Settings ..... 14-25
  - S! GPS Navi** ..... 11-5
  - Add to Phonebook ..... 11-26
  - Current Location ..... 11-5
  - Location Logs ..... 11-26
  - Navi Appli ..... 11-5
  - Settings ..... 14-31
  - S! Info Channel** ..... 10-5
  - Check Latest Information ..... 10-5
  - Get Latest Contents ..... 10-8
  - Save File ..... 10-8
  - Settings ..... 14-28
  - Subscribe for Service ..... 10-5
  - Weather Indicators ..... 10-5
  - S! Information Notif.** ..... 14-28
  - S! Quick News** ..... 10-4
  - Check Updated Information ..... 10-4
  - Delete Registered News ..... 10-8
  - Manually Update ..... 10-8
  - Register News ..... 10-4
  - Settings ..... 14-27
  - Save**
  - Blog/Mail Member ..... 5-8
  - Bluetooth® ..... 13-6
  - Bookmarks ..... 6-10
  - Events ..... 11-9
  - Holidays ..... 11-10



Own Dictionary .....	2-15	<b>Search</b>		<b>Set Max Cost Limit .....</b>	<b>14-14</b>
Phone Book Entries .....	2-20	Messages in a Folder .....	5-28	<b>Set Mute Seconds .....</b>	<b>4-6</b>
S! Quick News .....	10-4	Phone Book .....	2-21	<b>Set Quick Yahoo! Mail .....</b>	<b>5-5</b>
Saved Pages .....	6-10	Songs .....	9-11	<b>Set Ringtone .....</b>	<b>14-8</b>
Tasks .....	11-12	<b>Secret Data</b>		From Data Folder .....	12-16
Templates .....	2-15	Phone Book Entries .....	2-24	<b>Set Sub Clock .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
Text Memos .....	11-14	schedule .....	11-10	<b>Setting When Folded .....</b>	<b>14-13</b>
Tomo-Den .....	3-12	<b>Secret Data Only Mode .....</b>	<b>4-7</b>	<b>Shoot Framed Images .....</b>	<b>7-11</b>
TV Links .....	8-14	<b>Secret Folders .....</b>	<b>4-7</b>	<b>Shooting</b>	
<b>Saved Pages .....</b>	<b>6-10</b>	<b>Secret Mode .....</b>	<b>4-7</b>	Auto Timer .....	7-11
Delete .....	6-16	<b>Secure Remote Lock .....</b>	<b>4-5</b>	Blog Upload .....	7-14
Number of Pages .....	6-16	<b>Security Code .....</b>	<b>1-20</b>	Chance Capture .....	7-12
Open .....	6-10	<b>Select Image (Video Call) .....</b>	<b>14-14</b>	Continuous Shooting .....	7-10
Protect .....	6-16	<b>Select Microphone .....</b>	<b>14-11</b>	Frame .....	7-11
Save .....	6-10	<b>Select Network .....</b>	<b>14-15</b>	Panoramic Shooting .....	7-11
<b>Schedule (Events) .....</b>	<b>11-9</b>	<b>Send Location Info .....</b>	<b>14-31</b>	Smile Mode .....	7-10
Add Holidays .....	11-10	<b>Send Messages .....</b>	<b>5-6</b>	Speed Movie .....	7-12
Check .....	11-10	Request Delivery Report .....	5-21	Still Images .....	7-6
Copy .....	11-27	<b>Send Referrer .....</b>	<b>14-20</b>	Videos .....	7-8
Delete .....	11-11, 11-27	<b>Send/Recv. Settings .....</b>	<b>14-17</b>	<b>Shortcut-key Setting .....</b>	<b>14-29</b>
Edit .....	11-27	<b>Server Mail .....</b>	<b>5-11</b>	<b>Shutter Sound .....</b>	<b>14-24</b>
Icon Display .....	11-27	Delete .....	5-24	<b>Side Key Guard .....</b>	<b>1-23</b>
Number of Schedules .....	11-27	Forward .....	5-24	<b>Simple Menu .....</b>	<b>2-27</b>
Reset Holiday .....	11-27	Mail List .....	5-11, 5-24	<b>Smile Level .....</b>	<b>14-24</b>
Save .....	11-9	<b>Set Hold Tone .....</b>	<b>14-13</b>	<b>Smile Mode .....</b>	<b>7-10</b>
Save a Text Memo to Schedule .....	11-28	<b>Set Image Disp.</b>		<b>SMS</b>	
Windows .....	11-9	(S! Quick News) .....	14-27	Receive .....	5-10
<b>Screen Effect .....</b>	<b>14-5</b>	<b>Set Image Disp. (Video Player) ...</b>	<b>14-25</b>	Send .....	5-7
<b>Script Settings .....</b>	<b>14-20</b>	<b>Set Main Time .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>	SMS Center Selection .....	14-19
<b>Scroll (Internet) .....</b>	<b>14-20</b>			SMS Settings .....	14-16
<b>Scroll (Mail) .....</b>	<b>14-19</b>				



SMTP Settings .....	5-4	Speed Movie .....	7-12	Copy .....	2-14
Software Update .....	15-4	Standby Disp. Set. (Mobile Widget) .....	14-27	Correction .....	2-14
<b>Songs</b>		Standby Setting (Weather Indicators) .....	14-28	Cut .....	2-14
BGM playback .....	9-10	Standby Settings (S! Quick News) .....	14-27	Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜) .....	2-14
Bluetooth® .....	13-7	Start Attachment (auto) .....	14-19	Deletion .....	2-14
Download .....	9-4	Stereo Earphone Conversion		Emoticons .....	2-14
Effect .....	9-10	Cable .....	1-21	Key Assignments .....	15-11
Equalizer .....	9-10	Storage Location (Camera) .....	14-24	Kuten Code List .....	15-14
Memory Info .....	9-11	Streaming Music and Video .....	6-8	Kuten Codes .....	2-29
Play .....	9-5	Style Mode Settings .....	14-3	Line Feed .....	2-28
Playlist .....	9-6	Sub-address Setting .....	14-12	Lower Case .....	2-14
Repeat Setting .....	9-10	Subtitles .....	14-22	Lower Case & Upper Case .....	2-28
Resume Play .....	9-10			Overwrite & Insert Modes .....	2-28
Search .....	9-11			Paste .....	2-14
Set as Ringtone .....	9-11			Pictographs .....	2-14
Sort .....	9-11			Quote Data .....	2-29
Streaming Music and Video .....	6-8			Settings .....	14-29
Transfer From PC .....	9-4			Single-byte & Double-byte .....	2-28
<b>Sort (Change Order)</b>				Space .....	2-28
Booked Programs .....	8-16			Split Windows .....	2-12
Desktop Icons .....	2-27			Symbols .....	2-14
Files .....	12-16			T9 Input Mode .....	2-16
Folders (Bookmark) .....	6-15			Text Entry Window .....	2-11
Folders (Mail) .....	5-26			Text Input Methods .....	2-12
Messages .....	5-28			Use Dictionary .....	2-28
Original Menu Items .....	14-7			Word Prediction .....	2-12
Playlist Songs .....	9-11			<b>Text Memo</b> .....	11-14
Songs .....	9-11			Check Information .....	11-28
Tasks .....	11-28			Delete .....	11-14, 11-28
<b>Sound/Vib Settings</b> .....	14-25			Save .....	11-14
<b>Specifications</b> .....	15-42			Save from Scanned Data .....	11-30

## T

<b>T9 Change Mode</b> .....	14-29
<b>T9 Input Mode</b> .....	2-16
<b>Templates (Common Phrases)</b>	
Delete .....	2-29
Edit .....	2-15, 2-29
Insert .....	2-14
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	2-11
2-touch Mode .....	2-16
5-touch Mode .....	2-12
Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana ...	2-14
Character Entry Modes .....	2-12
Common Phrases (Templates) .....	2-14



Sort	11-28
<b>Text Reader</b>	<b>11-23</b>
Check Scanned Text	11-24
Delete Scanned Data	11-30
Edit Scanned Text	11-29
NEGA/POSI Mode	11-29
Scan	11-24
Scan Modes	11-23
Scan Window	11-23
<b>Time Shift Playback</b>	<b>8-7</b>
Time Shift Setup	14-23
<b>Time-out to Search</b>	<b>14-31</b>
<b>To Do List (Tasks)</b>	<b>11-12</b>
Change Order	11-28
Check	11-12
Delete	11-13, 11-28
Save	11-12
Set Status	11-28
<b>Tomo-Den</b>	<b>3-12</b>
Cancel Entries	3-19
Dial	3-12
Save Entries	3-12
Send S! Mail	3-12
<b>Tomomato-Mail</b>	<b>5-16</b>
<b>Trim away (Still Image)</b>	<b>12-10</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>15-6</b>
<b>TV</b>	<b>8-2</b>
Brightness	8-13
Channel Settings	8-3
Data Broadcasts	8-7

Main/Sub Sound	8-13
Program Guide	8-8
Program Info	8-13
Record	8-9
Record Timer	8-11
Settings	14-22
Sound Switch	8-13
Time Shift Playback	8-7
View Timer	8-11
Watch	8-6
Windows	8-4
<b>TV Effect</b>	<b>14-22</b>
<b>TV Link</b>	
Delete	8-14
Number of TV Links	8-14
Save	8-14
Show Details	8-14
<b>TV Power Saving</b>	<b>14-22</b>
<b>TV Sound While Closed</b>	<b>14-22</b>

## U

<b>Update</b>	
Data Broadcast	8-13
Life History Viewer	11-27
S! Quick News List	10-8
Server Mail List	5-11, 5-24
Web Page	6-13
<b>USB Mode Setting</b>	<b>13-9</b>
<b>USIM Card</b>	<b>1-10</b>
Copy Phone Book Entries	2-24, 2-31

Copy SMS Messages	5-26
Delete Phone Book Entries	2-32
Delete SMS Messages	5-26
Insertion & Removal	1-12
PINs	1-11

## V

<b>Vibrator</b>	<b>14-9</b>
<b>Video Call</b>	<b>3-7</b>
Brightness	3-17
Color Mode Set	3-18
Display Light	3-18
Hyper Clear Voice	3-17
Settings	14-14
Visual Prefer.	3-17
White Balance	3-17
Windows	3-7
<b>Videos</b>	
Playlist	12-7
Streaming Video	6-8
<b>View Timer</b>	<b>8-11</b>
<b>Viewer Settings</b>	<b>14-5</b>
<b>Voice Announce</b>	<b>14-11</b>
<b>Voice Call</b>	<b>3-3</b>
Hyper Clear Voice	3-17
Send Touch Tones	3-17
<b>Voice Mail</b>	<b>3-14</b>
Missed Call Notification	3-15
Play Messages	3-15
<b>Voice Memo</b>	<b>3-4, 11-15</b>



Auto Voice Memo .....	14-13
Play/Delete Messages .....	3-5, 3-18
Record the Other Party's Voice .....	3-4
Record Your Voice .....	11-15

**W**

<b>Wallpaper (Stand-by Display) .....</b>	<b>14-3</b>
Image in Data Folder .....	12-16
Recorded Video .....	7-15
Shot Still Image .....	7-15
Video in Data Folder .....	12-16
<b>Warning Messages .....</b>	<b>14-21</b>
<b>Warranty .....</b>	<b>15-60</b>
<b>Weather Indicators .....</b>	<b>10-5</b>
Indicator List .....	15-20
Manual Update .....	10-9
Settings .....	14-28
Subscribe for Service .....	10-5
<b>Weather Notif. ....</b>	<b>14-28</b>
<b>Weather Update .....</b>	<b>14-28</b>
<b>Wi-Fi .....</b>	<b>13-11</b>
Access Point Settings .....	13-13
Display Information .....	13-15
Easy Connecting (AOSS) .....	13-12
Easy Connecting (WPS) .....	13-13
Manual Setup .....	13-13
Search & Connect to Priority Connections .....	13-14
Search Access Points .....	13-13
<b>Wi-Fi (ON/OFF) .....</b>	<b>13-11</b>

<b>Wi-Fi Setting .....</b>	<b>14-32</b>
<b>Wi-Fi/3G Change Setting .....</b>	<b>14-32</b>
<b>Word Prediction .....</b>	<b>2-12, 14-29</b>
<b>Write Personal Information .....</b>	<b>14-25</b>
<b>Write/Del User Data .....</b>	<b>14-25</b>

**Y**

<b>Yahoo! Keitai .....</b>	<b>6-3</b>
Switch to PC .....	6-12





# Warranty & After Sales Service

## Warranty

A warranty card is included with 940N.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

## After Sales Service

Refer to “Troubleshooting” (P. 15-6) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 15-61), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

## Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties for failed calls, etc. due to failure or malfunction of this product.
- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files). SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

## Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-61).



If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information.  
For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

## ■ Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

# SoftBank 940N User Guide

---

January 2010, First Edition

**SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**

For additional information,  
please visit a SoftBank Shop.

**Model: SoftBank 940N**

**Manufacturer: NEC Corporation**

---

MDT-000137-EAA0